

Physik-Institut der Universität Zürich in conjunction with ETH Zürich

## General Relativity

## AUTUMN SEMESTER 2019

Prof. Philippe Jetzer

Original version by Arnaud Borde

## Sources of inspiration for this course include

- S. Carroll, Spacetime and Geometry, Pearson, 2003
- S. Weinberg, Gravitation and Cosmology, Wiley, 1972
- N. Straumann, General Relativity with applications to Astrophysics, Springer Verlag, 2004
- C. Misner, K. Thorne and J. Wheeler, Gravitation, Freeman, 1973
- R. Wald, General Relativity, Chicago University Press, 1984
- T. Fliessbach, Allgemeine Relativitätstheorie, Spektrum Verlag, 1995
- B. Schutz, A first course in General Relativity, Cambridge, 1985
- R. Sachs and H. Wu, General Relativity for mathematicians, Springer Verlag, 1977
- J. Hartle, Gravity, An introduction to Einstein's General Relativity, Addison Wesley, 2002
- H. Stephani, General Relativity, Cambridge University Press, 1990
- M. Maggiore, Gravitational Waves: Volume 1: Theory and Experiments, Oxford University Press, 2007
- A. Zee, Einstein Gravity in a Nutshell, Princeton University Press, 2013
- M. Guidry, Modern General Relativity, Cambridge University Press, 2019

As well as the lecture notes of

- Sean Carroll (http://arxiv.org/abs/gr-qc/9712019)
- Matthias Blau (http://www.blau.itp.unibe.ch/Lecturenotes.html)
- Gian Michele Graf


## Contents

I Introduction ..... 6
1 Newton's theory of gravitation ..... 6
2 Goals of general relativity ..... 7
II Special Relativity ..... 9
3 Lorentz transformations ..... 9
3.1 Galilean invariance ..... 9
3.2 Lorentz transformations ..... 10
$3.3 \quad$ Proper time ..... 12
4 Relativistic mechanics ..... 13
$4.1 \quad$ Equations of motion ..... 13
4.2 Energy and momentum ..... 13
4.3 Equivalence between mass and energy ..... 14
$5 \quad$ Tensors in Minkowski space ..... 14
6 Electrodynamics ..... 17
$7 \quad$ Accelerated reference systems in special relativity ..... 18
III Towards General Relativity ..... 20
$8 \quad$ The equivalence principle ..... 20
8.1 About the masses ..... 20
8.2 About the forces ..... 20
$8.3 \quad$ Riemann space ..... 22
$9 \quad$ Physics in a gravitational field ..... 25
9.1 Equations of motion ..... 25
9.2 Christoffel symbols ..... 26
9.3 Newtonian limit ..... 27
10 Time dilation ..... 28
10.1 Proper time ..... 28
10.2 Redshift ..... 28
10.3 Photon in a gravitational field ..... 29
11 Geometrical considerations ..... 30
11.1 Curvature of space ..... 30
IV Differential Geometry ..... 32
12 Differentiable manifolds ..... 32
12.1 Tangent vectors and tangent spaces ..... 33
12.2 The tangent map ..... 36
13 Vector and tensor fields ..... 37
13.1 Flows and generating vector fields ..... 38
$14 \quad$ Lie derivative ..... 40
15 Differential forms ..... 42
15.1 Exterior derivative of a differential form. ..... 43
15.2 Stokes theorem ..... 46
15.3 The inner product of a $p$-form ..... 46
16 Affine connections: Covariant derivative of a vector field ..... 48
16.1 Parallel transport along a curve ..... 50
16.2 Round trips by parallel transport ..... 52
16.3 Covariant derivatives of tensor fields ..... 54
16.4 Local coordinate expressions for covariant derivative. ..... 55
17 Curvature and torsion of an affine connection, Bianchi identities ..... 57
17.1 Bianchi identities for the special case of zero torsion ..... 59
18 Riemannian connections ..... 60
V General Relativity ..... 64
19 Physical laws with gravitation ..... 64
19.1 Mechanics ..... 64
19.2 Electrodynamics ..... 64
19.3 Energy-momentum tensor ..... 65
$20 \quad$ Einstein's field equations ..... 66
20.1 The cosmological constant ..... 68
21 The Einstein-Hilbert action ..... 68
$22 \quad$ Static isotropic metric ..... 71
22.1 Form of the metric ..... 71
22.2 Robertson expansion ..... 71
22.3 Christoffel symbols and Ricci tensor for the standard form ..... 72
22.4 Schwarzschild metric ..... 73
23 General equations of motion ..... 74
23.1 Trajectory ..... 76
VI Applications of General Relativity ..... 80
24 Light deflection ..... 80
25 Perihelion precession ..... 83
25.1 Quadrupole moment of the Sun ..... 86
26 Lie derivative of the metric and Killing vectors ..... 87
27 Maximally symmetric spaces ..... 88
$28 \quad$ Friedmann equations ..... 91
29 Gravitational waves ..... 95
29.1 Linearized Field Equations ..... 96
29.2 Electromagnetic Waves ..... 99
29.3 The Case of Gravity ..... 99
29.4 Quadrupole Radiation ..... 102

## Part I

## Introduction

## 1 Newton's theory of gravitation

In his book Principia in 1687, Isaac Newton laid the foundations of classical mechanics and made a first step in unifying the laws of physics.

The trajectories of $N$ point masses, attracted to each other via gravity, are the solutions to the equation of motion

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{i} \frac{\mathrm{~d}^{2} \vec{r}_{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t^{2}}=-G \sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq i}}^{N} \frac{m_{i} m_{j}\left(\vec{r}_{i}-\vec{r}_{j}\right)}{\left|\vec{r}_{i}-\vec{r}_{j}\right|^{3}} \quad i=1 \ldots N \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\vec{r}_{i}(t)$ being the position of point mass $m_{i}$ at time $t$. Newton's constant of gravitation is determined experimentally to be

$$
\begin{equation*}
G=6.6743 \pm 0.0007 \times 10^{-11} \mathrm{~m}^{3} \mathrm{~kg}^{-1} \mathrm{~s}^{-2} \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The scalar gravitational potential $\phi(\vec{r})$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi(\vec{r})=-G \sum_{j=1}^{N} \frac{m_{j}}{\left|\vec{r}-\vec{r}_{j}\right|}=-G \int \mathrm{~d}^{3} r^{\prime} \frac{\rho\left(\vec{r}^{\prime}\right)}{\left|\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right|} \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where it has been assumed that the mass is smeared out in a small volume $\mathrm{d}^{3} r$. The mass is given by $\mathrm{d} m=\rho\left(\vec{r}^{\prime}\right) \mathrm{d}^{3} r^{\prime}, \rho\left(\vec{r}^{\prime}\right)$ being the mass density. For point-like particles we have $\rho\left(\vec{r}^{\prime}\right) \sim m_{j} \delta^{(3)}\left(\vec{r}^{\prime}-\vec{r}_{j}\right)$. The gradient of the gravitational potential can then be used to produce the equation of motion:

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \frac{\mathrm{~d}^{2} \vec{r}}{\mathrm{~d} t^{2}}=-m \nabla \phi(\vec{r}) \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

According to (1.3), the field $\phi(\vec{r})$ is determined through the mass of the other particles. The corresponding field equation derived from (1.3) is given by ${ }^{1}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \phi(\vec{r})=4 \pi G \rho(\vec{r}) \tag{1.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

The so called Poisson equation (1.5) is a linear partial differential equation of $2^{\text {nd }}$ order. The source of the field is the mass density. Equations (1.4) and (1.5) show the same structure as the field equation of electrostatics:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \phi_{e}(\vec{r})=-4 \pi \rho_{e}(\vec{r}) \tag{1.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the non-relativistic equation of motion for charged particles

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \frac{\mathrm{~d}^{2} \vec{r}}{\mathrm{~d} t^{2}}=-q \nabla \phi_{e}(\vec{r}) \tag{1.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, $\rho_{e}$ is the charge density, $\phi_{e}$ is the electrostatic potential and $q$ represents the charge which acts as coupling constant in 1.7. $m$ and $q$ are independent characteristics of the considered body. In

[^0]analogy one could consider the "gravitational mass" (right side) as a charge, not to be confused with the "inertial mass" (left side). Experimentally, one finds to very high accuracy ( $\sim 10^{-13}$ ) that they are the same. As a consequence, all bodies fall at a rate independent of their mass (Galileo Galilei). This appears to be just a chance in Newton's theory, whereas in GR it will be an important starting point.

For many applications, 1.4 and 1.5 are good enough. It must however be clear that these equations cannot be always valid. In particular (1.5) implies an instantaneous action at a distance, what is in contradiction with the predictions of special relativity. We therefore have to suspect that Newton's theory of gravitation is only a special case of a more general theory.

## 2 Goals of general relativity

In order to get rid of instantaneous interactions, we can try to perform a relativistic generalization of Newton's theory (eqs. 1.4 and 1.5), similar to the transition from electrostatics (eqs. 1.6) and (1.7) to electrodynamics.

The Laplace operator $\Delta$ is completed such as to get the D'Alembert operator (wave equation)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \Rightarrow \square=\frac{1}{c^{2}} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}}-\Delta \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Changes in $\rho_{e}$ travel with the speed of light to another point in space. If we consider inertial coordinate frames in relative motion to each other it is clear that the charge density has to be related to a current density. In other words, charge density and current density transform into each other. In electrodynamics we use the current density $j^{\alpha}(\alpha=0,1,2,3)$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho_{e} \rightarrow\left(\rho_{e} c, \rho_{e} v^{i}\right)=j^{\alpha}, \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the $v^{i}$ are the cartesian components of the velocity $\vec{v}(i=1,2,3)$. An analogous generalization can be performed for the potential:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{e} \rightarrow\left(\phi_{e}, A^{i}\right)=A^{\alpha} . \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

The relativistic field equation is then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \phi_{e}=-4 \pi \rho_{e} \rightarrow \square A^{\alpha}=\frac{4 \pi}{c} j^{\alpha} \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the static case, the 0 -component reduces to the equation on the left.
Equation (2.4) is equivalent to Maxwell's equations (in addition one has to choose a suitable gauge condition). Since electrostatics and Newton's theory have the same mathematical structure, one may want to generalize it the same way. So in (1.5) one could introduce the change $\Delta \rightarrow \square$. Similarly one generalizes the mass density. But there are differences with electrodynamics. The first difference is that the charge $q$ of a particle is independent on how the particle moves; this is not the case for the mass: $m=\frac{m_{0}}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}}}$.

As an example, consider a hydrogen atom with a proton (rest mass $m_{p}$, charge $+e$ ) and an electron (rest mass $m_{e}$, charge $-e$ ). Both have a finite velocity within the atom. The total charge of the atom
is $q=q_{e}+q_{p}=0$, but for the total mass we get $m_{H} \neq m_{p}+m_{e}$ (binding energy). Formally this means that charge is a Lorentz scalar (does not depend on the frame in which the measurement is performed). Therefore we can assign a charge to an elementary particle, and not only a "charge at rest", whereas for the mass we must specify the rest mass.

Since charge is a Lorentz scalar, the charge density ( $\rho_{e}=\frac{\delta q}{\delta V}$ ) transforms like the 0-component of a Lorentz vector ( $\frac{1}{\delta V}$ gets a factor $\gamma=\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}$ due to length contraction). The mass density ( $\rho=\frac{\delta m}{\delta V}$ ) transforms instead like the 00-component of a Lorentz tensor, which we denote as the energy-momentum tensor $T_{\alpha \beta}$. This follows from the fact that the energy (mass is energy $E=m c^{2}$ ) is the 0 -component of a 4 -vector (energy-momentum vector $p^{\alpha}$ ) and transforms as such. Thus, instead of 2.2 , we shall have

$$
\rho \Rightarrow\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\rho c^{2} & \rho c v^{i}  \tag{2.5}\\
\rho c v^{i} & \rho v^{i} v^{j}
\end{array}\right) \sim T^{\alpha \beta} \quad i, j=1,2,3
$$

This implies that we have to generalize the gravitational potential $\phi$ to a quantity depending on 2 indices which we shall call the metric tensor $g^{\alpha \beta}$. Hence we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \phi=4 \pi G \rho \Rightarrow \square g^{\alpha \beta} \sim G T^{\alpha \beta} \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

In GR one finds 2.6 for a weak gravitational field (linearized case), e.g. used for the description of gravitational waves.

Due to the equivalence between mass and energy, the energy carried by the gravitational field is also mass and thus also a source of the gravitational field itself. This leads to non-linearities. One can note that photons do not have a charge and thus Maxwell's equations can be linear.
To summarize:

1. GR is the relativistic generalization of Newton's theory. Several similarities between GR and electrodynamics exist.
2. GR requires tensorial equations (rather than vectorial as in electrodynamics).
3. There are non-linearities which will lead to non-linear field equations.

## Part II

## Special Relativity

## 3 Lorentz transformations

A reference system with a well defined choice of coordinates is called a coordinate system. Inertial reference systems (IS) are (from a "practical" point of view) systems which move with constant speed with respect to distant (thus fixed) stars in the sky. Newton's equations of motion are valid in IS. NonIS are reference systems which are accelerated with respect to an IS. In this chapter we will establish how to transform coordinates between different inertial systems.

### 3.1 Galilean invariance

Galilei stated that "all IS are equivalent", i.e. all physical laws are valid in any IS: the physical laws are covariant under transformations from an IS to another IS'. Covariant means here form invariant. The equations should have the same form in all IS.

With the coordinates $x^{i}(i=1,2,3)$ and $t$, an event in an IS can be defined. In another IS', the same event has different coordinates $x^{\prime i}$ and $t^{\prime}$. A general Galilean transformation can then be written as:

$$
\begin{align*}
x^{\prime i} & =\alpha^{i}{ }_{k} x^{k}+v^{i} t+a^{i},  \tag{3.1}\\
t^{\prime} & =t+\tau \tag{3.2}
\end{align*}
$$

where

- $x^{i}, v^{i}$ and $a^{i}$ are cartesian components of vectors
- $\vec{v}=v^{i} \vec{e}_{i}$ where $\vec{e}_{i}$ is a unit vector
- we use the summation rule over repeated indices: $\alpha^{i}{ }_{k} x^{k}=\sum_{k} \alpha^{i}{ }_{k} x^{k}$
- latin indices run on $1,2,3$
- greek indices run on $0,1,2,3$
- $\vec{v}$ is the relative velocity between IS and IS'
- $\vec{a}$ is a constant vector (translation)
- $\alpha^{i}{ }_{k}$ is the relative rotation of coordinates systems, $\alpha=\left(\alpha^{i}{ }_{k}\right)$ is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha^{i}{ }_{n}\left(\alpha^{T}\right)_{k}^{n}=\delta^{i}{ }_{k} \quad \text { or } \quad \alpha \alpha^{T}=\mathbb{I} \quad \text { i.e. } \quad \alpha^{-1}=\alpha^{T} \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

The condition $\alpha \alpha^{T}=\mathbb{I}$ ensures that the line element

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\mathrm{d} x^{2}+\mathrm{d} y^{2}+\mathrm{d} z^{2} \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

remains invariant. $\alpha$ can be defined by giving 3 Euler angles. Eqs. (3.1) and (3.2) define a 10 ( $a=3, v=3, \tau=1$ and $\alpha=3$ ) parametric group of transformations, the so-called Galilean group.

The laws of mechanics are left invariant under transformations (3.1) and 3.2. But Maxwell's equations are not invariant under Galilean transformations, since they contain the speed of light $c$. This led Einstein to formulate a new relativity principle (special relativity, SR): All physical laws, including Maxwell's equations, are valid in any inertial system. This leads us to Lorentz transformations (instead of Galilean), thus the law of mechanics have to be modified.

### 3.2 Lorentz transformations

We start by introducing 4-dimensional vectors, glueing time and space together to a spacetime. The Minkowski coordinates are defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{0}=c t, \quad x^{1}=x, \quad x^{2}=y, \quad x^{3}=z \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

$x^{\alpha}$ is a vector in a 4 -dimension space (or 4 -vector). An event is given by $x^{\alpha}$ in an IS and by $x^{\alpha}$ in an IS'. Homogeneity of space and time imply that the transformation from $x^{\alpha}$ to $x^{\prime \alpha}$ has to be linear:

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{\prime \alpha}=\Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta} x^{\beta}+a^{\alpha}, \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $a^{\alpha}$ is a space and time translation. The relative rotations and boosts are described by the $4 \times 4$ matrix $\Lambda$. Linear means in this context that the coefficients $\Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta}$ and $a^{\alpha}$ do not depend on $x^{\alpha}$. In order to preserve the speed of light appearing in Maxwell's equations as a constant, the $\Lambda_{\beta}^{\alpha}$ have to be such that the square of the line element

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \mathrm{d} x^{\alpha} \mathrm{d} x^{\beta}=c^{2} \mathrm{~d} t^{2}-\mathrm{d} \vec{r}^{2} \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

remains unchanged, with the Minkowski metric

$$
\eta_{\alpha \beta}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0  \tag{3.8}\\
0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & -1
\end{array}\right)
$$

Because of $\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\mathrm{d} s^{\prime 2} \Leftrightarrow c^{2} \mathrm{~d} \tau^{2}=c^{2} \mathrm{~d} \tau^{\prime 2}$, the proper time is an invariant under Lorentz transformations. Indeed for light $\mathrm{d} \tau^{2}=\mathrm{d} t^{2}-\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{2}+\mathrm{d} y^{2}+\mathrm{d} z^{2}}{c^{2}}=0$. Thus, $c^{2}=\left|\frac{\mathrm{d} \vec{x}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\right|^{2}$ and $c=\left|\frac{\mathrm{d} \vec{x}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\right|$. Applying a Lorentz transformation results in $c=\left|\frac{\mathrm{d} \vec{x}^{\prime}}{\mathrm{d} t^{\prime}}\right|$. This has the important consequence that the speed of light $c$ is the same in all coordinate systems (what we intended by the definition of (3.7).

A 4-dimensionial space together with this metric is called a Minkowski space. Inserting (3.6) into the invariant condition $\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\mathrm{d} s^{\prime 2}$ gives

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{d} s^{\prime 2} & =\eta_{\alpha \beta} \mathrm{d} x^{\prime \alpha} \mathrm{d} x^{\prime \beta} \\
& =\eta_{\alpha \beta} \Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\gamma} \mathrm{d} x^{\gamma} \Lambda^{\beta}{ }_{\delta} \mathrm{d} x^{\delta} \\
& =\eta_{\gamma \delta} \mathrm{d} x^{\gamma} \mathrm{d} x^{\delta}=\mathrm{d} s^{2} . \tag{3.9}
\end{align*}
$$

Then we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Lambda_{\gamma}^{\alpha} \Lambda^{\beta}{ }_{\delta} \eta_{\alpha \beta}=\eta_{\gamma \delta} \quad \text { or } \quad \Lambda^{T} \eta \Lambda=\eta \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Rotations are special subcases incorporated in $\Lambda: x^{\prime \alpha}=\Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta} x^{\beta}$ with $\Lambda^{i}{ }_{k}=\alpha^{i}{ }_{k}$, and $\Lambda_{0}^{0}=1$, $\Lambda^{i}{ }_{0}=\Lambda^{0}{ }_{i}=0$. The entire group of Lorentz transformations (LT) is the so called Poincaré group (and has 10 parameters). The case $a^{\alpha} \neq 0$ corresponds to the Poincaré group or inhomogeneous Lorentz group, while the subcase $a^{\alpha}=0$ can be described by the homogeneous Lorentz group. Translations and rotations are subgroups of Galilean and Lorentz groups.

Consider now a Lorentz 'boost' in the direction of the $x$-axis: $x^{\prime 2}=x^{2}, x^{\prime 3}=x^{3} . v$ denotes the relative velocity difference between IS and the boosted IS'. Then

$$
\Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\Lambda^{0}{ }_{0} & \Lambda^{0}{ }_{1} & 0 & 0  \tag{3.11}\\
\Lambda^{1}{ }_{0} & \Lambda^{1}{ }_{1} & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Evaluating eq. 3.10):

$$
\begin{align*}
(\gamma, \delta) & =(0,0) & \left(\Lambda_{0}^{0}\right)^{2}-\left(\Lambda_{0}^{1}\right)^{2}=1  \tag{3.12a}\\
& =(1,1) & \left(\Lambda^{0}{ }_{1}\right)^{2}-\left(\Lambda_{1}^{1}\right)^{2}=-1  \tag{3.12b}\\
& =(0,1) \text { or }(1,0) & \Lambda_{0}^{0} \Lambda_{0}^{0}{ }_{1}-\Lambda^{1}{ }_{0} \Lambda^{1}{ }_{1}=0 \tag{3.12c}
\end{align*}
$$

The solution to this system is

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\Lambda_{0}^{0} & \Lambda^{0}{ }_{1}  \tag{3.13}\\
\Lambda^{1}{ }_{0} & \Lambda^{1}{ }_{1}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{rr}
\cosh \Psi & -\sinh \Psi \\
-\sinh \Psi & \cosh \Psi
\end{array}\right) .
$$

For the origin of IS' we have $x^{\prime 1}=0=\Lambda^{1}{ }_{0} c t+\Lambda^{1}{ }_{1} v t$. This way we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tanh \Psi=-\frac{\Lambda^{1}{ }_{0}}{\Lambda_{0}^{0}}=\frac{v}{c} \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

and as a function of velocity:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \Lambda_{0}^{0}=\Lambda_{1}^{1}=\gamma=\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}}}  \tag{3.15a}\\
& \Lambda_{1}^{0}=\Lambda^{1}{ }_{0}=\frac{-v / c}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}}} \tag{3.15b}
\end{align*}
$$

A Lorentz transformation (called a boost) along the $x$-axis can then be written explicitly as

$$
\begin{align*}
& x^{\prime}=\frac{x-v t}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}}},  \tag{3.16a}\\
& y^{\prime}=y,  \tag{3.16b}\\
& z^{\prime}=z,  \tag{3.16c}\\
& c t^{\prime}=\frac{c t-x \frac{v}{c}}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}}}, \tag{3.16d}
\end{align*}
$$

which is valid only for $|v|<c$. For $|v| \ll c$, 3.16) recovers the special (no rotation) Galilean transformation $x^{\prime}=x-v t, y^{\prime}=y, z^{\prime}=z$ and $t^{\prime}=t$. The parameter

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi=\operatorname{arctanh} \frac{v}{c} \tag{3.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

is called the rapidity. From this we find for the addition of parallel velocities:

$$
\begin{align*}
\Psi & =\Psi_{1}+\Psi_{2} \\
\Rightarrow v & =\frac{v_{1}+v_{2}}{1+\frac{v_{1} v_{2}}{c^{2}}} \tag{3.18}
\end{align*}
$$

### 3.3 Proper time

The time coordinate $t$ in IS is the time shown by clocks at rest in IS. We next determine the proper time $\tau$ shown by a clock which moves with velocity $\vec{v}(t)$. Consider a given moment $t_{0}$ an IS', which moves with respect to IS with a constant velocity $\vec{v}_{0}\left(t_{0}\right)$. During an infinitesimal time interval $\mathrm{d} t^{\prime}$ the clock can be considered at rest in IS', thus:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} \tau=\mathrm{d} t^{\prime}=\sqrt{1-\frac{v_{0}^{2}}{c^{2}}} \mathrm{~d} t \tag{3.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

Indeed (3.16) with $x=v_{0} t$ gives $t^{\prime}=\frac{t\left(1-v_{0}^{2} / c^{2}\right)}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v_{0}^{2}}{c^{2}}}}=t \sqrt{1-\frac{v_{0}^{2}}{c^{2}}}$ and thus 3.19.
At the next time $t_{0}+\mathrm{d} t$, we consider an IS" with velocity $\vec{v}_{0}=\vec{v}\left(t_{0}+\mathrm{d} t\right)$ and so on. Summing up all infinitesimal proper times $\mathrm{d} \tau$ gives the proper time interval:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau=\int_{t_{1}}^{t_{2}} \mathrm{~d} t \sqrt{1-\frac{v^{2}(t)}{c^{2}}} \tag{3.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is the time interval measured by an observer moving at a speed $v(t)$ between $t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$ (as given by a clock at rest in IS). This effect is called time dilation.

## 4 Relativistic mechanics

Let us now perform the relativistic generalization of Newton's equation of motion for a point particle.

### 4.1 Equations of motion

The velocity $\vec{v}$ can be generalized to a 4 -velocity vector $u^{\alpha}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
v^{i}=\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t} \rightarrow u^{\alpha}=\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\alpha}}{\mathrm{d} \tau} \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\mathrm{d} \tau=\frac{\mathrm{d} s}{c}, \mathrm{~d} \tau$ is invariant. With $\mathrm{d} x^{\prime \alpha}=\Lambda_{\beta}^{\alpha} \mathrm{d} x^{\beta}$ it follows that $u^{\alpha}$ transforms like $\mathrm{d} x^{\alpha}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
u^{\prime \alpha}=\Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta} u^{\beta} \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

All quantities which transforms this way are Lorentz vectors or form-vectors. The generalized equation of motion is then

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \frac{\mathrm{~d} u^{\alpha}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}=f^{\alpha} \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Both $\frac{\mathrm{d} u^{\alpha}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}$ and $f^{\alpha}$ are Lorentz vectors, therefore, 4.3 is a Lorentz vector equation: if we perform a Lorentz transformation, we get $m \frac{\mathrm{~d} u^{\prime \alpha}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}=f^{\prime \alpha}$. Eq. 4.3) is covariant under Lorentz transformations and for $v \ll c$ it reduces to Newton's equations. (left hand side becomes $m\left(0, \frac{\mathrm{~d} \vec{v}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\right)$ and the right hand side $\left(f^{0}, \vec{f}\right)=(0, \vec{K})$ ). The Minkowski force $f^{\prime \alpha}$ is determined in any IS through a corresponding LT: $f^{\prime \alpha}=\Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta} f^{\beta}$. For example $\vec{v}=-v \vec{e}_{1}$ with $\gamma=\left(1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}\right)^{-1 / 2}$, leads to $f^{\prime 0}=\frac{\gamma v K^{1}}{c}, f^{\prime 1}=\gamma K^{1}$, $f^{\prime 2}=K^{2}$ and $f^{\prime 3}=K^{3}$. For a general direction of velocity $(-\vec{v})$ we get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
f^{\prime 0}=\gamma \frac{\vec{v} \cdot \vec{K}}{c}, \quad \overrightarrow{f^{\prime}}=\vec{K}+(\gamma-1) \vec{v} \frac{\vec{v} \cdot \vec{K}}{v^{2}} . \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 4.2 Energy and momentum

The 4 -momentum $p^{\alpha}=m u^{\alpha}=m \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{\alpha}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}$ is a Lorentz vector. With (3.19) we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
p^{\alpha}=\left(\frac{m c}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}}}, \frac{m v^{i}}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}}}\right)=\left(\frac{E}{c}, \vec{p}\right) . \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

This yields the relativistic

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { energy : } & E=\frac{m c^{2}}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}}}=\gamma m c^{2} \\
\text { momentum : } & \vec{p}=\frac{m \vec{v}}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}}}=\gamma m \vec{v} \xrightarrow{v \ll} \vec{p}=m \vec{v} .
\end{array}
$$

With (4.4), the 0 -component of (4.3) becomes (in the case $v \ll c$ )

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d} E}{\mathrm{~d} t}=\underbrace{\vec{v} \cdot \vec{K}}_{\begin{array}{c}
\text { power given }  \tag{4.7}\\
\text { to the particle }
\end{array}}
$$

This justifies to call the quantity $E=\gamma m c^{2}$ an energy. From $\mathrm{d} s^{2}=c^{2} \mathrm{~d} \tau^{2}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \mathrm{d} x^{\alpha} \mathrm{d} x^{\beta}$ it follows $\eta_{\alpha \beta} p^{\alpha} p^{\beta}=m^{2} c^{2}$ and thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
E^{2}=m^{2} c^{4}+c^{2} \vec{p}^{2} \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

the relativistic energy-momentum relation. The limit cases are

$$
E=\sqrt{m^{2} c^{4}+c^{2} \vec{p}^{2}} \approx \begin{cases}m c^{2}+\frac{p^{2}}{2 m} & v \ll c \text { or } p \ll m c^{2}  \tag{4.9}\\ c p & v \sim c \text { or } p \gg m c^{2}\end{cases}
$$

with $p=|\vec{p}|$. For particles with no rest mass (photons): $E=c p$ (exact relation).

### 4.3 Equivalence between mass and energy

One can divide the energy into the rest energy

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{0}=m c^{2} \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the kinetic energy $E_{k i n}=E-E_{0}=E-m c^{2}$. The quantities defined in 4.6 are conserved when more particles are involved. Due to the equivalence between energy and mass, the mass or the mass density becomes a source of the gravitational field.

## 5 Tensors in Minkowski space

Let us discuss the transformation properties of physical quantities under a Lorentz transformation. We have already seen how a 4 -vector is transformed:

$$
\begin{equation*}
V^{\alpha} \rightarrow V^{\prime \alpha}=\Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta} V^{\beta} \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is a so-called contravariant 4 -vector (indices are up). The coordinate system transforms according to $X^{\alpha} \rightarrow X^{\prime \alpha}=\Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta} X^{\beta}$. A covariant 4 -vector is defined through

$$
\begin{equation*}
V_{\alpha}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} V^{\beta} \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us now define the matrix $\eta^{\alpha \beta}$ as the inverse matrix to $\eta_{\alpha \beta}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\eta^{\alpha \beta} \eta_{\beta \gamma}=\delta_{\gamma}^{\alpha} \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

In our case

$$
\eta^{\alpha \beta}=\eta_{\alpha \beta}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0  \tag{5.4}\\
0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & -1
\end{array}\right)
$$

With (5.3) we can express (5.2) equally as

$$
\begin{equation*}
V^{\alpha}=\eta^{\alpha \beta} V_{\beta} \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

The transformation of a covariant vector is then given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
V_{\alpha}^{\prime}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} V^{\prime \beta}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \Lambda^{\beta}{ }_{\gamma} V^{\gamma}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \Lambda_{\gamma}^{\beta} \eta^{\gamma \delta} V_{\delta}=\bar{\Lambda}_{\alpha}^{\delta} V_{\delta}, \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{\Lambda}_{\alpha}^{\delta}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \Lambda^{\beta}{ }_{\gamma} \eta^{\gamma \delta} \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

(one can use $\Lambda_{\alpha}{ }^{\beta}$ instead of $\bar{\Lambda}^{\beta}{ }_{\alpha}$ but one should be very careful in writings since $\Lambda_{\alpha}{ }^{\beta} \neq \Lambda^{\beta}{ }_{\alpha}$ ). Thanks to 3.10, we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{\Lambda}_{\alpha}^{\gamma} \Lambda_{\beta}^{\alpha}=\eta_{\alpha \delta} \eta^{\gamma \epsilon} \Lambda_{\epsilon}^{\delta} \Lambda_{\beta}^{\alpha}=\eta^{\gamma \epsilon} \eta_{\epsilon \beta}=\delta^{\gamma}{ }_{\beta} \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

And similarly, we get $\Lambda^{\beta}{ }_{\alpha} \bar{\Lambda}^{\alpha}{ }_{\gamma}=\delta^{\beta}{ }_{\gamma}$. In matrix notation, we have $\Lambda \bar{\Lambda}=\bar{\Lambda} \Lambda=\mathbb{I}$ and thus $\bar{\Lambda}=\Lambda^{-1}$. To summarize the transformations of 4 -vectors:

- A contravariant vector transforms with $\Lambda$
- A covariant vector transforms with $\Lambda^{-1}=\bar{\Lambda}$

The scalar product of two vectors $V^{\alpha}$ and $U^{\beta}$ is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
V^{\alpha} U_{\alpha}=V_{\alpha} U^{\alpha}=\eta^{\alpha \beta} V_{\alpha} U_{\beta}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} V^{\alpha} U^{\beta} \tag{5.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

and is invariant under Lorentz transformations: $V^{\prime \alpha} U_{\alpha}^{\prime}=\underbrace{\Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta} \bar{\Lambda}_{\alpha}^{\delta}{ }_{\alpha}}_{\delta_{\beta}^{\delta}} V^{\beta} U_{\delta}=V^{\beta} U_{\beta}$.
The operator $\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{\alpha}}$ transforms like a covariant vector: $\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{\prime \alpha}}=\frac{\partial x^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\prime \alpha}} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{\beta}}$. Since $\frac{\partial x^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\prime \alpha}}=\bar{\Lambda}^{\beta}{ }_{\alpha} \Rightarrow \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{\prime \alpha}}=$ $\bar{\Lambda}^{\beta}{ }_{\alpha} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{\beta}}$. We will now use the notations $\partial_{\alpha} \equiv \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{\alpha}}$ (covariant vector) and $\partial^{\alpha} \equiv \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{\alpha}}$ (contravariant vector). The D'Alembert operator can be written as $\square=\partial^{\alpha} \partial_{\alpha}=\eta^{\alpha \beta} \partial_{\alpha} \partial_{\beta}=\frac{1}{c^{2}} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}}-\Delta$ and is a Lorentz scalar.

A quantity is a rank $r$ contravariant tensor if its components transform like the coordinates $x^{\alpha}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
T^{\prime \alpha_{1} \ldots \alpha_{r}}=\Lambda^{\alpha_{1}}{ }_{\beta_{1}} \ldots \Lambda^{\alpha_{r}}{ }_{\beta_{r}} T^{\beta_{1} \ldots \beta_{r}} \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Tensors of rank 0 are scalars, tensors of rank 1 are vectors. For "mixed" tensors we have for example:

$$
T^{\prime \alpha}{ }_{\beta \gamma}=\Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\delta} \bar{\Lambda}^{\epsilon}{ }_{\beta} \bar{\Lambda}_{\gamma}^{\mu} T^{\delta}{ }_{\epsilon \mu}
$$

The following operations can be used to form new tensors:

1. Linear combinations of tensors with the same upper and lower indices: $T^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta}=a R^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta}+b S^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta}$
2. Direct products of tensors: $T^{\alpha \beta} V^{\gamma}$ (works with mixed indices)
3. Contractions of tensors: $T^{\alpha \beta}{ }_{\beta}$ or $T^{\alpha \beta} V_{\beta}$ (lowers a tensor by 2 in rank)
4. Differentiation of a tensor field: $\partial_{\alpha} T^{\beta \alpha}$ (the derivative $\partial_{\alpha}$ of any tensor is a tensor with one additional lower index $\alpha$ : $\partial_{\alpha} T^{\beta \gamma} \equiv R_{\alpha}{ }^{\beta \gamma}$ )
5. Going from a covariant to a contravariant component of a tensor is defined like in (5.2) and 5.5) (lowering and raising indices with $\eta^{\alpha \beta}, \eta_{\alpha \beta}$ ).

One must be aware that

- the order of the upper and lower indices is important,
- $\Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta}$ is not a tensor.
$\eta$ can be considered as a tensor: $\eta=\eta^{\alpha \beta}=\eta_{\alpha \beta}$ is the Minkowski tensor.

$$
\eta_{\alpha \beta}^{\prime}=\bar{\Lambda}_{\alpha}^{\gamma} \bar{\Lambda}^{\delta}{ }_{\beta} \eta_{\gamma \delta} \stackrel{\sqrt{3.10}}{=} \bar{\Lambda}^{\gamma}{ }_{\alpha} \bar{\Lambda}^{\delta}{ }_{\beta} \Lambda^{\mu}{ }_{\gamma} \Lambda^{\nu}{ }_{\delta} \eta_{\mu \nu} \stackrel{5.8}{=} \eta_{\alpha \beta}
$$

$\eta$ appears in the line element $\left(\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \mathrm{d} x^{\alpha} \mathrm{d} x^{\beta}\right)$ and is thus the metric tensor in Minkowski space. We also have $\eta^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta}=\eta^{\alpha \gamma} \eta_{\gamma \beta}=\delta^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta}=\eta_{\beta}{ }^{\alpha}$, and thus the Kronecker symbol is also a tensor.

We define the totally antisymmetric tensor or (Levi-Civita tensor) as

$$
\epsilon^{\alpha \beta \gamma \delta}= \begin{cases}+1 & (\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) \text { is an even permutation of }(0,1,2,3)  \tag{5.11}\\ -1 & (\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) \text { is an odd permutation of }(0,1,2,3) \\ 0 & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

Without proof we have: $(\operatorname{det}(\Lambda)=1)$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \epsilon^{\prime \alpha \beta \gamma \delta}=\epsilon^{\alpha \beta \gamma \delta} \\
& \epsilon_{\alpha \beta \gamma \delta}=\eta_{\alpha \alpha^{\prime}} \eta_{\beta \beta^{\prime}} \eta_{\gamma \gamma^{\prime}} \eta_{\delta \delta^{\prime}} \epsilon^{\alpha^{\prime} \beta^{\prime} \gamma^{\prime} \delta^{\prime}}=-\epsilon^{\alpha \beta \gamma \delta} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The functions $S(x), V^{\alpha}(x), T^{\alpha \beta} \ldots$ with $x=\left(x^{0}, x^{1}, x^{2}, x^{3}\right)$ are a scalar field, a vector field, or a tensor field ... respectively if:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S^{\prime}\left(x^{\prime}\right)=S(x) \\
& V^{\prime \alpha}\left(x^{\prime}\right)=\Lambda_{\beta}^{\alpha} V^{\beta}(x) \\
& T^{\prime \alpha \beta}\left(x^{\prime}\right)=\Lambda_{\delta}^{\alpha} \Lambda_{\gamma}^{\beta} T^{\delta \gamma}(x)
\end{aligned}
$$

Also the argument has to be transformed, thus $x^{\prime}$ has to be understood as $x^{\prime \alpha}=\Lambda^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta} x^{\beta}$.

## 6 Electrodynamics

Maxwell's equations relate the fields $\vec{E}(\vec{r}, t), \vec{B}(\vec{r}, t)$, the charge density $\rho_{e}(\vec{r}, t)$ and the current density $\vec{\jmath}(\vec{r}, t):$

$$
\text { inhomogeneous }\left\{\begin{array} { l } 
{ \operatorname { d i v } \vec { E } = 4 \pi \rho _ { c } }  \tag{6.1}\\
{ \operatorname { r o t } \vec { B } = \frac { 4 \pi } { c } \vec { \jmath } + \frac { 1 } { c } \frac { \partial \vec { E } } { \partial t } }
\end{array} \quad \text { homogeneous } \left\{\begin{array}{l}
\operatorname{div} \vec{B}=0 \\
\operatorname{rot} \vec{E}=-\frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \vec{B}}{\partial t}
\end{array}\right.\right.
$$

The continuity equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{div} \vec{\jmath}+\dot{\rho}_{c}=0 \rightarrow \partial_{\alpha} j^{\alpha}=0 \tag{6.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $j^{\alpha}=\left(c \rho_{e}, \vec{\jmath}\right)$ follows from the conservation of charge, which for an isolated system implies $\partial_{t} \int j^{0} \mathrm{~d}^{3} r=0 . \quad \partial_{\alpha} j^{\alpha}$ is a Lorentz scalar. We can define the field strength tensor which is given by the antisymmetric matrix

$$
F^{\alpha \beta}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & -E_{x} & -E_{y} & -E_{z}  \tag{6.3}\\
E_{x} & 0 & -B_{z} & B_{y} \\
E_{y} & B_{z} & 0 & -B_{x} \\
E_{z} & -B_{y} & B_{x} & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

Using this tensor we can rewrite the inhomogeneous Maxwell equations

$$
\begin{equation*}
\underbrace{\partial_{\alpha} F^{\alpha \beta}}_{4-\text { vector }}=\frac{4 \pi}{c} \underbrace{j^{\beta}}_{4-\text { vector }} \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

and also the homogeneous ones:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\epsilon^{\alpha \beta \gamma \delta} \partial_{\beta} F_{\gamma \delta}=0 \tag{6.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Both equations are covariant under a Lorentz transformation. Eq. 6.5 allows to represent $F^{\alpha \beta}$ as a "curl" of a 4 -vector $A^{\alpha}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
F^{\alpha \beta}=\partial^{\alpha} A^{\beta}-\partial^{\beta} A^{\alpha} . \tag{6.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can then reformulate Maxwell's equations for $A^{\alpha}=\left(\phi, A^{i}\right)$. From 6.6 it follows that the gauge transformation

$$
\begin{equation*}
A^{\alpha} \rightarrow A^{\alpha}+\partial^{\alpha} \Theta \tag{6.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

of the 4 -vector $A^{\alpha}$ leaves $F^{\alpha \beta}$ unchanged, where $\Theta(x)$ is an arbitrary scalar field. The Lorenz gauge $\partial_{\alpha} A^{\alpha}=0$ leads to the decoupling of the inhomogeneous Maxwell's equation 6.4 to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square A^{\alpha}=\frac{4 \pi}{c} j^{\alpha} . \tag{6.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

The generalized equation of motion for a particle with charge $q$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \frac{\mathrm{~d} u^{\alpha}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}=\frac{q}{c} F^{\alpha \beta} u_{\beta} \tag{6.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

The spatial components give the expression of the Lorentz force $\frac{\mathrm{d} \vec{p}}{\mathrm{~d} t}=q\left(\vec{E}+\frac{\vec{v}}{c} \wedge \vec{B}\right)$ with $\vec{p}=\gamma m \vec{v}$. The energy-momentum tensor for the electromagnetic field is

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{e m}^{\alpha \beta}=\frac{1}{4 \pi}\left(F^{\alpha}{ }_{\gamma} F^{\gamma \beta}+\frac{1}{4} \eta^{\alpha \beta} F_{\gamma \delta} F^{\gamma \delta}\right) \tag{6.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

The 00 -component represents the energy density of the field $T_{e m}^{00}=u_{e m}=\frac{1}{8 \pi}\left(\vec{E}^{2}+\vec{B}^{2}\right)$ and the 0 i -components the Poynting vector $\vec{S}^{i}=c T_{e m}^{0 i}=\frac{c}{4 \pi}(\vec{E} \wedge \vec{B})^{i}$. In terms of these tensors, Maxwell's equations are $\partial_{\alpha} T_{e m}^{\alpha \beta}=-\frac{1}{c} F^{\beta \gamma} j_{\gamma} . T_{e m}^{\alpha \beta}$ is symmetric and conserved: $\partial_{\alpha} T_{e m}^{\alpha \beta}=0$. Setting $\beta=0$ leads to energy conservation whereas $\partial_{\alpha} T_{e m}^{\alpha k}=0$ leads to conservation of the $k^{\text {th }}$ component of the momentum. One should note that $\partial_{\alpha} T_{e m}^{\alpha \beta}=0$ is valid only if there is no external force, otherwise we can write $\partial_{\alpha} T_{e m}^{\alpha \beta}=f^{\beta}$, where $f^{\beta}$ is the external force density. Such an external force can often be included in the energy-momentum tensor.

## 7 Accelerated reference systems in special relativity

Non inertial systems can be considered in the context of special relativity. However, then the physical laws no longer have their simple covariant form. In e.g. a rotating coordinate system, additional terms will appear in the equations of motion (centrifugal terms, Coriolis force, etc.).

Let us look at a coordinate system KS' (with coordinates $x^{\prime \mu}$ ) which rotates with constant angular speed with respect to an inertial system IS $\left(x^{\alpha}\right)$ :

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
x=x^{\prime} \cos \left(\omega t^{\prime}\right)-y^{\prime} \sin \left(\omega t^{\prime}\right)  \tag{7.1}\\
y=x^{\prime} \sin \left(\omega t^{\prime}\right)+y^{\prime} \cos \left(\omega t^{\prime}\right) \\
z=z^{\prime} \\
t=t^{\prime}
\end{array}\right.
$$

and assume that $\omega^{2}\left(x^{\prime 2}+y^{\prime 2}\right) \ll c^{2}$. Then we insert (7.1) into the line element $\mathrm{d} s$ (in the known IS form):

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \mathrm{d} x^{\alpha} \mathrm{d} x^{\beta} & =c^{2} \mathrm{~d} t^{2}-\mathrm{d} x^{2}-\mathrm{d} y^{2}-\mathrm{d} z^{2} \\
& =\left[c^{2}-\omega^{2}\left(x^{\prime 2}+y^{\prime 2}\right)\right] \mathrm{d} t^{\prime 2}+2 \omega y^{\prime} \mathrm{d} x^{\prime} \mathrm{d} t^{\prime}-2 \omega x^{\prime} \mathrm{d} y^{\prime} \mathrm{d} t^{\prime}-\mathrm{d} x^{\prime 2}-\mathrm{d} y^{\prime 2}-\mathrm{d} z^{\prime 2} \\
& =g_{\mu \nu} \mathrm{d} x^{\prime \mu} \mathrm{d} x^{\prime \prime} . \tag{7.2}
\end{align*}
$$

The resulting line element is more complicated. For arbitrary coordinates $x^{\prime \mu}, \mathrm{d} s^{2}$ is a quadratic form of the coordinate differentials $\mathrm{d} x^{\prime \mu}$. Consider a general coordinate transformation from $x^{\mu}$ (in IS) to $x^{\prime \mu}$ (in KS'):

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{\alpha} \equiv x^{\alpha}\left(x^{\prime}\right)=x^{\alpha}\left(x^{\prime 0}, x^{\prime 1}, x^{\prime 2}, x^{\prime 3}\right), \tag{7.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

then we get for the line element

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \mathrm{d} x^{\alpha} \mathrm{d} x^{\beta}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \frac{\partial x^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\prime \mu}} \frac{\partial x^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\prime \nu}} \mathrm{d} x^{\prime \mu} \mathrm{d} x^{\prime \nu}=g_{\mu \nu}\left(x^{\prime}\right) \mathrm{d} x^{\prime \mu} \mathrm{d} x^{\prime \nu}, \tag{7.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{equation*}
g_{\mu \nu}\left(x^{\prime}\right)=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \frac{\partial x^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\prime \mu}} \frac{\partial x^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\prime \nu}} \tag{7.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

The quantity $g_{\mu \nu}$ is the metric tensor of the KS' system. It is symmetric ( $g_{\mu \nu}=g_{\nu \mu}$ ) and depends on $x^{\prime}$. It is called metric because it defines distances between points in coordinate systems.

In an accelerated reference system we get inertial forces. In the rotating frame we expect to experience the centrifugal force $\vec{Z}$, which can be written in terms of a centrifugal potential $\phi$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi=-\frac{\omega^{2}}{2}\left(x^{\prime 2}+y^{\prime 2}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad \vec{Z}=-m \vec{\nabla} \phi \tag{7.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

This enables us to see that $g_{00}$ from $\sqrt[7.2]{ }$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
g_{00}=1+\frac{2 \phi}{c^{2}} \tag{7.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The centrifugal potential appears in the metric tensor. We will see later that the first derivatives of the metric tensor are related to the forces in the relativistic equations of motion. To get the meaning of $t^{\prime}$ in KS' we evaluate (7.2) at a point with $\mathrm{d} x^{\prime}=\mathrm{d} y^{\prime}=\mathrm{d} z^{\prime}=0$ :

$$
\mathrm{d} \tau=\frac{\mathrm{d} s_{\text {clock }}}{c}=\sqrt{g_{00}} \mathrm{~d} t^{\prime}=\sqrt{1+\frac{2 \phi}{c^{2}}} \mathrm{~d} t^{\prime}=\underbrace{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}}}_{\begin{array}{c}
\text { correspond to clocks }  \tag{7.8}\\
\text { time computed in } \\
\text { an inertial system }
\end{array}} \mathrm{d} t
$$

$\tau$ represents the time of a clock at rest in KS'.
In an inertial system we have $g_{\mu \nu}=\eta_{\mu \nu}$ and the clock moves with speed $v=\omega \rho\left(\rho=\sqrt{x^{\prime 2}+y^{\prime 2}}\right)$. With (7.6) we see that both expressions in 7.8 are the same.

The coefficients of the metric tensor $g_{\mu \nu}\left(x^{\prime}\right)$ are functions of the coordinates. Such a dependence will also arise when one uses curved coordinates. Consider for example cylindrical coordinates:

$$
x^{\prime 0}=c t=x^{0}, \quad x^{\prime 1}=\rho, \quad x^{\prime 2}=\theta, \quad x^{\prime 3}=z .
$$

This results in the line element

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=c^{2} \mathrm{~d} t^{2}-\mathrm{d} x^{2}-\mathrm{d} y^{2}-\mathrm{d} z^{2}=c^{2} \mathrm{~d} t^{2}-\mathrm{d} \rho^{2}-\rho^{2} \mathrm{~d} \theta^{2}-\mathrm{d} z^{2}=g_{\mu \nu}\left(x^{\prime}\right) \mathrm{d} x^{\mu} \mathrm{d} x^{\prime \nu} \tag{7.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $g_{\mu \nu}$ is diagonal:

$$
g_{\mu \nu}=\left(\begin{array}{llll}
1 & & &  \tag{7.10}\\
& -1 & & \\
& & -\rho^{2} & \\
& & & -1
\end{array}\right)
$$

The fact that the metric tensor depends on the coordinates can be either due to the fact that the considered coordinate system is accelerated or that we are using non-cartesian coordinates.

## Part III

## Towards General Relativity

## 8 The equivalence principle

The principle of equivalence of gravitation and inertia tells us how an arbitrary physical system responds to an external gravitational field (with the help of tensor analysis). The physical basis of general relativity is the equivalence principle as formulated by Einstein:

1. Inertial and gravitational mass are equal
2. Gravitational forces are equivalent to inertial forces
3. In a local inertial frame, we experience the known laws of special relativity without gravitation

### 8.1 About the masses

The inertial mass $m_{t}$ is the quantity appearing in Newton's law $\vec{F}=m_{t} \vec{a}$ which acts against acceleration by external forces. In contrast, the gravitational mass $m_{s}$ is the proportionality constant relating the gravitational force between mass points to each other. For a particle moving in a homogeneous gravitational field, we have the equation $m_{t} \ddot{z}=-m_{s} g$, whose solution is

$$
\begin{equation*}
z(t)=-\frac{1}{2} \frac{m_{s}}{m_{t}} g t^{2} \quad\left(+v_{0} t+z_{0}\right) \tag{8.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Galilei stated that "all bodies fall at the same rate in a gravitational field", i.e. $\frac{m_{s}}{m_{t}}$ is the same for all bodies. Another experiment is to consider the period $T$ of a pendulum (in the small amplitude approximation): $\left(\frac{T}{2 \pi}\right)^{2}=\frac{m_{s}}{m_{t}} \frac{l}{g}$, where $l$ is the length of the pendulum. Newton verified that this period is independent on the material of the pendulum to a precision of about $10^{-3}$. Eötvös ( $\sim 1890$ ), using torsion balance, got a precision of about $5 \times 10^{-9}$. Today's precision is about $10^{-11} \sim 10^{-12}$, this is way we can make the assumption $m_{s}=m_{t}$ on safe grounds.

Due to the equivalence between energy and mass $\left(E=m c^{2}\right)$, all forms of energy contribute to mass, and due to the first point of the equivalence principle, to the inertial and to the gravitational masses.

### 8.2 About the forces

As long as gravitational and inertial masses are equal, then gravitational forces are equivalent to inertial forces: going to a well-chosen accelerated reference frame, one can get rid of the gravitational field. As an example take the equation of motion in the homogeneous gravitational field at Earth's surface:

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{t} \frac{\mathrm{~d}^{2} \vec{r}}{\mathrm{~d} t^{2}}=m_{s} \vec{g} \tag{8.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression is valid for a reference system which is at rest on Earth's surface ( $\sim$ to a good approximation an IS). Then we perform the following transformation to an accelerated KS system:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{r}=\vec{r}^{\prime}+\frac{1}{2} \vec{g} t^{\prime 2}, \quad t=t^{\prime}, \tag{8.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we assume $g t \ll c$. The origin of KS $\vec{r}^{\prime}=0$ moves in IS with $\vec{r}(t)=\frac{1}{2} \vec{g} t^{2}$. Then, inserting 8.3 into (8.2) results in

$$
\begin{align*}
m_{t} \frac{\mathrm{~d}^{2}}{\mathrm{~d} t^{\prime 2}}\left(\vec{r}^{\prime}+\frac{1}{2} \vec{g} t^{\prime 2}\right) & =m_{s} \vec{g} \\
\Rightarrow m_{t} \frac{\mathrm{~d}^{2} \vec{r}^{\prime}}{\mathrm{d} t^{\prime 2}} & =\left(m_{s}-m_{t}\right) \vec{g} \tag{8.4}
\end{align*}
$$

If $m_{s}=m_{t}$, the resulting equation in KS is the one of a free moving particle $\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} \vec{r}^{\prime}}{\mathrm{d} t^{\prime 2}}=0$; the gravitational force vanishes. As another example in a "free falling elevator" the "observer" does not feel any gravity.

Einstein generalized this finding postulating that (this is the Einstein equivalence principle) "in a free falling accelerated reference system all physical processes run as if there is no gravitational field". Notice that the "mechanical" finding is now expanded to all types of physical processes (at all times and places). Moreover also non-homogeneous gravitational fields are allowed. The equality of inertial and gravitational mass is also called the weak equivalence principle (or universality of the free fall).

As an example of a freely falling system, consider a satellite in orbit around Earth (assuming that the laboratory on the satellite is not rotating). Thus the equivalence principle states that in such a system all physical processes run as if there would be no gravitational field. The processes run as in an inertial system: the local IS. However, the local IS is not an inertial system, indeed the laboratory on the satellite is accelerated compared to the reference system of the fixed distant stars. The equivalence principle implies that in a local IS the rules of special relativity apply.

- For an observer on the satellite laboratory all physical processes follow special relativity and there are neither gravitational nor inertial forces.
- For an observer on Earth, the laboratory moves in a gravitational field and moreover inertial forces are present, since it is accelerated.

The motion of the satellite laboratory, i.e. its free falling trajectory, is such that the gravitational forces and inertial forces just compensate each other (cf (8.4)). The compensation of the forces is exactly valid only for the center of mass of the satellite laboratory. Thus the equivalence principle applies only to a very small or local satellite laboratory ("how small" depends on the situation).

The equivalence principle can also be formulated as follows:
"At every space-time point in an arbitrary gravitational field, it is possible to choose a locally inertial coordinate system such that, within a sufficiently small region around the point in question, the laws of nature take the same form as in non-accelerated Cartesian coordinate systems in the absence of gravitation. ${ }^{2}$

[^1]The equivalence principle allows us to set up the relativistic laws including gravitation; indeed one can just perform a coordinate transformation to another KS:

$$
\left.\begin{array}{c}
\text { special relativity laws } \\
\text { without } \\
\text { gravitation }
\end{array}\right\} \xrightarrow[\text { transformation }]{\text { coordinate }}\left\{\begin{array}{c}
\text { relativistic laws } \\
\text { with } \\
\text { gravitation }
\end{array}\right.
$$

The coordinate transformation includes the relative acceleration between the laboratory system and KS which corresponds to the gravitational field. Thus from the equivalence principle we can derive the relativistic laws in a gravitational field. However, it does not fix the field equations for $g_{\mu \nu}(x)$ since those equations have no analogue in special relativity.

From a geometrical point of view the coordinate dependence of the metric tensor $g_{\mu \nu}(x)$ means that space is curved. In this sense the field equations describe the connection between curvature of space and the sources of the gravitational field in a quantitative way.

### 8.3 Riemann space

We denote with $\xi^{\alpha}$ the Minkowski coordinates in the local IS (e.g. the satellite laboratory). From the equivalence principle, the special relativity laws apply. In particular, we have for the line element

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \mathrm{d} \xi^{\alpha} \mathrm{d} \xi^{\beta} \tag{8.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Going from the local IS to a KS with coordinates $x^{\mu}$ is given by a coordinate transformation $\xi^{\alpha}=$ $\xi^{\alpha}\left(x^{0}, x^{1}, x^{2}, x^{3}\right)$. Inserting this into (8.5) results in

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \frac{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu}} \frac{\partial \xi^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\nu}} \mathrm{d} x^{\mu} \mathrm{d} x^{\nu}=g_{\mu \nu}(x) d x^{\mu} d x^{\nu} \tag{8.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

and thus $g_{\mu \nu}(x)=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \frac{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu}} \frac{\partial \xi^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\nu}}$. A space with such a path element of the form 8.6 is called a Riemann space.

The coordinate transformation (expressed via $g_{\mu \nu}$ ) also describes the relative acceleration between KS and the local IS. Since at two different points of the local IS the accelerations are (in general) different, there is no global transformation in the form 8.6 that can be brought to the Minkowski form (8.5). We shall see that $g_{\mu \nu}$ are the relativistic gravitational potentials, whereas their derivatives determine the gravitational forces.


Figure 1: An experimenter and his two stones freely floating somewhere in outer space, i.e. in the absence of forces.


Figure 2: Constant acceleration upwards mimics the effect of a gravitational field: experimenter and stones drop to the bottom of the box.


Figure 3: The effect of a constant gravitational field: indistinguishable for our experimenter from that of a constant acceleration as in figure 2.


Figure 4: Free fall in a gravitational field has the same effect as no gravitational field (figure 1): experimenter and stones float.


Figure 5: The experimenter and his stones in a non-uniform gravitational field: the stones will approach each other slightly as they fall to the bottom of the elevator.


Figure 6: The experimenter and stones freely falling in a non-uniform gravitational field: the experimenter floats, so do the stones, but they move closer together, indicating the presence of some external forces.

## 9 Physics in a gravitational field

### 9.1 Equations of motion

According to the equivalence principle, in a local IS the laws of special relativity hold. For a mass point on which no forces act we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} \xi^{\alpha}}{\mathrm{d} \tau^{2}}=0 \tag{9.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the proper time $\tau$ is defined through $\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \mathrm{d} \xi^{\alpha} \mathrm{d} \xi^{\beta}=c^{2} \mathrm{~d} \tau^{2}$. We can also define the 4 -velocity as $u^{\alpha}=\frac{\mathrm{d} \xi^{\alpha}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}$. Solutions of (9.1) are straight lines

$$
\begin{equation*}
\xi^{\alpha}=a^{\alpha} \tau+b^{\alpha} \tag{9.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Light (or a photon) moves in the local IS on straight lines. However, for photons $\tau$ cannot be identified with the proper time since on the light cone $\mathrm{d} s=c \mathrm{~d} \tau=0$. Thus we denote by $\lambda$ a parameter of the trajectory of photons:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} \xi^{\alpha}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda^{2}}=0 \tag{9.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us now consider a global coordinate system KS with $x^{\mu}$ and metric $g_{\mu \nu}(x)$. At all points $x^{\mu}$, one can locally bring $\mathrm{d} s^{2}$ into the form $\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \mathrm{d} \xi^{\alpha} \mathrm{d} \xi^{\beta}$. Thus at all points $P$ there exists a transformation $\xi^{\alpha}(x)=\xi^{\alpha}\left(x^{0}, x^{1}, x^{2}, x^{3}\right)$ between $\xi^{\alpha}$ and $x^{\mu}$. The transformation varies from point to point. Consider a small region around point $P$. Inserting the coordinate transformation into the line element, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\eta_{\alpha \beta} \mathrm{d} \xi^{\alpha} \mathrm{d} \xi^{\beta}=\underbrace{\eta_{\alpha \beta} \frac{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu}} \frac{\partial \xi^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\nu}}}_{\equiv g_{\mu \nu}(x) \text { metric tensor }} \mathrm{d} x^{\mu} \mathrm{d} x^{\nu} . \tag{9.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

We write 9.1 in the form

$$
0=\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} \tau}\left(\frac{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu}} \frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}\right)=\frac{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu}} \frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau^{2}}+\frac{\partial^{2} \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu} \partial x^{\nu}} \frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{\nu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}
$$

multiply it by $\frac{\partial x^{\kappa}}{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}$ and make use of $\frac{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu}} \frac{\partial x^{\kappa}}{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}=\delta^{\kappa}{ }_{\mu}$. This way we can solve for $\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau^{2}}$ and get the following equation of motion in a gravitational field

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} x^{\kappa}}{\mathrm{d} \tau^{2}}=-\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\kappa} \frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{\nu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau} \tag{9.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\kappa}=\frac{\partial x^{\kappa}}{\partial \xi^{\alpha}} \frac{\partial^{2} \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu} \partial x^{\nu}} \tag{9.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\kappa}$ are called the Christoffel symbols and represent a pseudo force or fictive gravitational field (like centrifugal or Coriolis forces) that arises whenever one describes inertial motion in non-inertial coordinates. Eq. (9.5) is a second order differential equation for the functions $x^{\mu}(\tau)$ which describe the trajectory of a particle in KS with $g_{\mu \nu}(x)$. Eq. (9.5) can also be written as $m \frac{\mathrm{~d} u^{\alpha}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}=f^{\alpha}, u^{\alpha}=\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\alpha}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}$. Comparing with (4.3) one infers that the right hand side of 9.5 describes the gravitational forces. Due to (9.4), the velocity $\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}$ has to satisfy the condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
c^{2}=g_{\mu \nu} \frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{\nu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau} \quad(\text { for } m \neq 0) \tag{9.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

(assume $\mathrm{d} \tau \neq 0$ and $m \neq 0$ ). Due to (9.7) only 3 of the 4 components of $\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}$ are independent (this is also the case for the 4 -velocity in special relativity). For photons ( $m=0$ ) one finds instead, using (9.3), a completely analogous equation for the trajectory:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} x^{\kappa}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda^{2}}=-\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\kappa} \frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{\nu}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda} \tag{9.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

and since $\mathrm{d} \tau=\mathrm{d} s=0$, one has instead of (9.7):

$$
0=g_{\mu \nu} \frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{\nu}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda} \quad(\text { for } m=0)
$$

### 9.2 Christoffel symbols

The Christoffel symbols can be expressed in terms of the first derivatives of $g_{\mu \nu}$. Consider with (9.4):

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial g_{\mu \nu}}{\partial x^{\lambda}}+\frac{\partial g_{\lambda \nu}}{\partial x^{\mu}}-\frac{\partial g_{\mu \lambda}}{\partial x^{\nu}}= & \eta_{\alpha \beta}[\frac{\partial^{2} \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu} \partial x^{\lambda}} \frac{\partial \xi^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\nu}}+\underbrace{\frac{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu}} \frac{\partial^{2} \xi^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\nu} \partial x^{\lambda}}}_{1}] \\
& +\eta_{\alpha \beta}[\frac{\partial^{2} \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\lambda} \partial x^{\mu}} \frac{\partial \xi^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\nu}}+\underbrace{\frac{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\lambda}} \frac{\partial^{2} \xi^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\nu} \partial x^{\mu}}}_{2}] \\
& -\eta_{\alpha \beta}[\underbrace{\frac{\partial^{2} \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu} \partial x^{\nu}} \frac{\partial \xi^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\lambda}}}_{2}+\underbrace{\frac{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu}} \frac{\partial^{2} \xi^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\lambda} \partial x^{\nu}}}_{1}]
\end{aligned}
$$

Using $\eta_{\alpha \beta}=\eta_{\beta \alpha}$ this becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
=2 \eta_{\alpha \beta} \frac{\partial^{2} \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\mu} \partial x^{\lambda}} \frac{\partial \xi^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\nu}} \tag{9.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand

$$
\begin{align*}
g_{\nu \sigma} \Gamma_{\mu \lambda}^{\sigma} & =\overbrace{\eta_{\alpha \beta} \frac{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\nu}} \underbrace{g_{\nu} \xi^{\sigma}}_{\delta_{\rho}^{\beta}} \frac{\partial x^{\sigma}}{\partial \xi^{\rho}} \frac{\partial^{2} \xi^{\rho}}{\partial x^{\mu} \partial x^{\lambda}}}^{\Gamma_{\mu \lambda}^{\sigma}} \\
& =\eta_{\alpha \beta} \frac{\partial \xi^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\nu}} \frac{\partial^{2} \xi^{\beta}}{\partial x^{\mu} \partial x^{\lambda}} \\
& =\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{\partial g_{\mu \nu}}{\partial x^{\lambda}}+\frac{\partial g_{\lambda \nu}}{\partial x^{\mu}}-\frac{\partial g_{\mu \lambda}}{\partial x^{\nu}}\right] . \tag{9.10}
\end{align*}
$$

We introduce the inverse matrix $g^{\mu \nu}$ such that $g^{\mu \nu} g_{\nu \sigma}=\delta^{\mu}{ }_{\sigma}$. Therefore we can solve with respect to the Christoffel symbols:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{\mu \lambda}^{\kappa}=\frac{1}{2} g^{\kappa \nu}\left[\frac{\partial g_{\mu \nu}}{\partial x^{\lambda}}+\frac{\partial g_{\lambda \nu}}{\partial x^{\mu}}-\frac{\partial g_{\mu \lambda}}{\partial x^{\nu}}\right] \tag{9.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that the $\Gamma$ 's are symmetric in the lower indices $\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\kappa}=\Gamma_{\nu \mu}^{\kappa}$. The gravitational forces on the right hand side of 9.6 are given by derivatives of $g_{\mu \nu}$. Comparing with the equation of motion of a particle in a electromagnetic field shows that the $\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\lambda}$ correspond to the field $F^{\alpha \beta}$, whereas the $g_{\mu \nu}$ correspond to the potentials $A^{\alpha}$.

### 9.3 Newtonian limit

Let us assume that $v^{i} \ll c$ and the fields are weak and static (i.e. not time dependent). Thus $\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} \tau} \ll \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{0}}{\mathrm{~d} \tau}$. Inserting this into (9.5) leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} x^{\kappa}}{\mathrm{d} \tau^{2}}=-\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\kappa} \frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{\nu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau} \overbrace{\approx}^{\substack{\text { small } \\ \text { velocity }}}-\Gamma_{00}^{\kappa}\left(\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{0}}{\mathrm{~d} \tau}\right)^{2} . \tag{9.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

For static fields we get from 9.11 :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{00}^{\kappa} \overbrace{=}^{\text {staticity }}-\frac{g^{\kappa i}}{2} \frac{\partial g_{00}}{\partial x^{i}} \quad(i=1,2,3) \tag{9.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

(the other terms contain partial derivative with respect to $x^{0}$ which are zero by staticity). We write the metric tensor as $g_{\mu \nu}=\eta_{\mu \nu}+h_{\mu \nu}$. For weak fields we have $\left|h_{\mu \nu}\right|=\left|g_{\mu \nu}-\eta_{\mu \nu}\right| \ll 1$. In this case the coordinates $\left(c t, x^{i}\right)$ are "almost" Minkowski coordinates. Inserting the expansion for $g_{\mu \nu}$ into 9.13 (taking only linear terms in $h$ ) gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{00}^{\kappa}=\left(0, \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial h_{00}}{\partial x^{i}} \delta_{i}^{k}\right) \tag{9.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then, let us compute 9.12 for $\kappa=0, \kappa=j$ :

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} t}{\mathrm{~d} \tau^{2}} & =0 \Rightarrow \frac{\mathrm{~d} t}{\mathrm{~d} \tau}=\text { constant } \overbrace{=}^{\text {choice }} 1,  \tag{9.15a}\\
\frac{\mathrm{~d}^{2} x^{j}}{\mathrm{~d} \tau^{2}} & =-\frac{c^{2}}{2} \frac{\partial h_{00}}{\partial x^{j}} \underbrace{\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} t}{\mathrm{~d} \tau}\right)^{2}}_{1^{2}} \tag{9.15b}
\end{align*}
$$

Taking $\left(x^{j}\right)=\vec{r}$, we can write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} \vec{r}}{\mathrm{~d} t^{2}}=-\frac{c^{2}}{2} \nabla h_{00}(\vec{r}) \tag{9.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is to be compared with the Newtonian case $\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} \vec{r}}{\mathrm{~d} t^{2}}=-\nabla \phi(\vec{r})$. Therefore:

$$
\begin{equation*}
g_{00}(\vec{r})=1+h_{00}(\vec{r})=1+\frac{2 \phi(\vec{r})}{c^{2}} \tag{9.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Notice that the Newtonian limit (9.16) gives no clue on the other components of $h_{\mu \nu}$. The quantity $\frac{2 \phi}{c^{2}}$ is a measure of the strength of the gravitational field. Consider a spherically symmetric mass
distribution. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{2 \phi(R)}{c^{2}} & \approx 1.4 \times 10^{-9} & & \text { at Earth surface, } \\
& \approx 4 \times 10^{-6} & & \text { on the Sun (and similar stars) } \\
& \approx 3 \times 10^{-4} & & \text { on a white dwarf, } \\
& \approx 3 \times 10^{-1} & & \text { on a neutron star } \rightarrow \mathrm{GR} \text { required. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## 10 Time dilation

We study a clock in a static gravitational field and the phenomenon of gravitational redshift.

### 10.1 Proper time

The proper time $\tau$ of the clock is defined through the 4 -dimensional line element as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} \tau=\frac{\mathrm{d} s_{\text {clock }}}{c}=\frac{1}{c}\left(\sqrt{g_{\mu \nu}(x) \mathrm{d} x^{\mu} \mathrm{d} x^{\nu}}\right)_{\text {clock }} \tag{10.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

$x=\left(x^{\mu}\right)$ are the coordinates of the clock. The time shown by the clock depends on both the gravitational field and of its motion (the gravitational field being described by $g_{\mu \nu}$ ).

## Special cases:

1. Moving clock in an IS without gravity :

$$
\mathrm{d} \tau=\sqrt{1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}} \mathrm{~d} t
$$

$$
\left(g_{\mu \nu}=\eta_{\mu \nu}, \mathrm{d} x^{i}=v^{i} \mathrm{~d} t, \mathrm{~d} x^{0}=c \mathrm{~d} t\right)
$$

2. Clock at rest in a gravitational field $\left(\mathrm{d} x^{i}=0\right)$

$$
\mathrm{d} \tau=\sqrt{g_{00}} \mathrm{~d} t
$$

For a weak static field, one has with 9.17):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} \tau=\sqrt{1+\frac{2 \phi(r)}{c^{2}}} \mathrm{~d} t \quad\left(|\phi| \ll c^{2}\right) . \tag{10.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The fact that $\phi$ is negative implies that a clock in a gravitational field goes more slowly than a clock outside the gravitational field.

### 10.2 Redshift

Let us now consider objects which emit or absorb light with a given frequency. Consider only a static gravitational field ( $g_{\mu \nu}$ does not depend on time). A source in $\vec{r}_{A}$ (at rest) emits a monochromatic
electromagnetic wave at a frequency $\nu_{A}$. An observer at $\vec{r}_{B}$, also at rest, measures a frequency $\nu_{B}$.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { At source: } & \mathrm{d} \tau_{A}=\sqrt{g_{00}\left(\vec{r}_{A}\right)} \mathrm{d} t_{A}  \tag{10.3}\\
\text { At observer: } & \mathrm{d} \tau_{B}=\sqrt{g_{00}\left(\vec{r}_{B}\right)} \mathrm{d} t_{B}
\end{array}
$$

As a time interval we consider the time between two following peaks departing from $A$ or arriving at $B$. In this case $\mathrm{d} \tau_{A}$ and $\mathrm{d} \tau_{B}$ correspond to the period of the electromagnetic waves at $A$ and $B$, respectively, and therefore

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} \tau_{A}=\frac{1}{\nu_{A}}, \quad \mathrm{~d} \tau_{B}=\frac{1}{\nu_{B}} . \tag{10.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Going from $A$ to $B$ needs the same time $\Delta t$ for the first and the second peak of the electromagnetic wave. Consequently, they will arrive with a time delay which is equal to the one with which they were emitted, thus $\mathrm{d} t_{A}=\mathrm{d} t_{B}$. With 10.3 and 10.4 we get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\nu_{A}}{\nu_{B}}=\sqrt{\frac{g_{00}\left(\vec{r}_{B}\right)}{g_{00}\left(\vec{r}_{A}\right)}}, \quad \text { with } \quad z=\frac{\nu_{A}}{\nu_{B}}-1=\frac{\lambda_{B}}{\lambda_{A}}-1 . \tag{10.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

The quantity $z$ is the gravitational redshift:

$$
\begin{equation*}
z=\sqrt{\frac{g_{00}\left(\vec{r}_{B}\right)}{g_{00}\left(\vec{r}_{A}\right)}}-1 . \tag{10.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

For weak fields with $g_{00}=1+\frac{2 \phi}{c^{2}}$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
z=\frac{\phi\left(\vec{r}_{B}\right)-\phi\left(\vec{r}_{A}\right)}{c^{2}} \quad\left(|\phi| \ll c^{2}\right) \tag{10.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

such a redshift is observed by measuring spectral lines from stars. As an example take solar light with (10.7)

$$
z=\frac{\phi\left(r_{B}\right)-\phi\left(r_{A}\right)}{c^{2}} \approx-\frac{\phi\left(r_{A}\right)}{c^{2}}=\frac{G M_{\odot}}{c^{2} R_{\odot}} \approx 2 \times 10^{-6},
$$

with $M_{\odot} \approx 2 \times 10^{30} \mathrm{~kg}$ and $R_{\odot} \approx 7 \times 10^{8} \mathrm{~m}$. For a white dwarf we find $z \approx 10^{-4}$ and for a neutron star $z \approx 10^{-1}$. In general there are 3 effects which can lead to a modification in the frequency of spectral lines:

1. Doppler shift due to the motion of the source (or of the observer)
2. Gravitational redshift due to the gravitational field at the source (or at the observer)
3. Cosmological redshift due to the expansion of the Universe (metric tensor is time dependent)

### 10.3 Photon in a gravitational field

Consider a photon with energy $E_{\gamma}=\hbar \omega=2 \pi \hbar \nu$, travelling upwards in the homogeneous gravity field of the Earth, covering a distance of $h=h_{B}-h_{A}$ ( $h$ small). The corresponding redshift is

$$
\begin{equation*}
z=\frac{\nu_{A}}{\nu_{B}}-1=\frac{\phi\left(r_{B}\right)-\phi\left(r_{A}\right)}{c^{2}}=\frac{g\left(h_{B}-h_{A}\right)}{c^{2}}=\frac{g h}{c^{2}}, \tag{10.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

resulting in a frequency change $\Delta \nu=\nu_{B}-\nu_{A}\left(\nu_{A}>\nu_{B}, \nu_{B}=\nu\right)$ and thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\Delta \nu}{\nu}=-\frac{g h}{c^{2}} \tag{10.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

The photon changes its energy by $\Delta E_{\gamma}=-\frac{E_{\gamma}}{c^{2}} g h$ (like a particle with mass $\frac{E_{\gamma}}{c^{2}}=m$ ). This effect has been measured in 1965 (through the Mössbauer effect) as $\frac{\Delta \nu_{\text {exp }}}{\Delta \nu_{t h}}=1.00 \pm 0.01(1 \%$ accuracy $) \square^{3}$

## 11 Geometrical considerations

In general, the coordinate dependence of $g_{\mu \nu}(x)$ means that spacetime, defined through the line element $\mathrm{d} s^{2}$, is curved. The trajectories in a gravitational field are the geodesic lines in the corresponding spacetime.

### 11.1 Curvature of space

The line element in an $N$-dimensional Riemann space with coordinates $x=\left(x^{1}, \ldots, x^{N}\right)$ is given as

$$
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=g_{\mu \nu} \mathrm{d} x^{\mu} \mathrm{d} x^{\nu} \quad(\mu, \nu=1, \ldots, N)
$$

Let us just consider a two dimensional space $x=\left(x^{1}, x^{2}\right)$ with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=g_{11} \mathrm{~d} x^{1} \mathrm{~d} x^{1}+2 g_{12} \mathrm{~d} x^{1} \mathrm{~d} x^{2}+g_{22} \mathrm{~d} x^{2} \mathrm{~d} x^{2} \tag{11.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Examples:

- Plane with Cartesian coordinates $\left(x^{1}, x^{2}\right)=(x, y)$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\mathrm{d} x^{2}+\mathrm{d} y^{2} \tag{11.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

or with polar coordinates $\left(x^{1}, x^{2}\right)=(\rho, \phi)$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\mathrm{d} \rho^{2}+\rho^{2} \mathrm{~d} \phi^{2} \tag{11.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Surface of a sphere with angular coordinates $\left(x^{1}, x^{2}\right)=(\theta, \phi)$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=a^{2}\left(\mathrm{~d} \theta^{2}+\sin ^{2} \theta \mathrm{~d} \phi^{2}\right) \tag{11.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

The line element 11.2 can, via a coordinate transformation, be brought into the form 11.3). However, there is no coordinate transformation which brings (11.4) into (11.2). Thus:

- The metric tensor determines the properties of the space, among which is also the curvature.
- The form of the metric tensor is not uniquely determined by the space, in other words it depends on the choice of coordinates.

[^2]The curvature of the space is determined via the metric tensor (and it does not depend on the coordinate choice $\sqrt{7}$. If $g_{i k}=$ const then the space is not curved. In an Euclidian space, one can introduce Cartesian coordinates $g_{i k}=\delta_{i k}$. For a curved space $g_{i k} \neq$ const (does not always imply that space is curved). For instance by measuring the angles of a triangle and checking if their sum amounts to 180 degrees or differs, one can infer if the space is curved or not (for instance by being on the surface of a sphere).

[^3]
## Part IV

## Differential Geometry

## 12 Differentiable manifolds

A manifold is a topological space that locally looks like the Euclidean $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ space with its usual topology. A simple example of a curved space is the $\mathcal{S}^{2}$ sphere: one can setup local coordinates $(\theta, \varphi)$ which map $\mathcal{S}^{2}$ onto a plane $\mathbb{R}^{2}$ (a chart). Collections of charts are called atlases. There is no one-to-one map of $\mathcal{S}^{2}$ onto $\mathbb{R}^{2}$; we need several charts to cover $\mathcal{S}^{2}$.

Definition: Given a (topological) space $\mathcal{M}$, a chart on $\mathcal{M}$ is a one-to-one map $\phi$ from an open subset $\mathcal{U} \subset \mathcal{M}$ to an open subset $\phi(\mathcal{U}) \subset \mathbb{R}^{n}$, i.e. a map $\phi: \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$. A chart is often called a coordinate system. A set of charts with domain $\mathcal{U}_{\alpha}$ is called an atlas of $\mathcal{M}$, if $\bigcup_{\alpha} \mathcal{U}_{\alpha}=\mathcal{M},\left\{\phi_{\alpha} \mid \alpha \in I\right\}$.

Definition: $\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{M}=n$

Definition: Two charts $\phi_{1}, \phi_{2}$ are $\mathcal{C}^{\infty}$-related if both the maps $\phi_{2} \circ \phi_{1}^{-1}: \phi_{1}\left(\mathcal{U}_{1} \cap \mathcal{U}_{2}\right) \rightarrow \phi_{2}\left(\mathcal{U}_{1} \cap \mathcal{U}_{2}\right)$ and its inverse are $\mathcal{C}^{\infty} . \phi_{2} \circ \phi_{1}^{-1}$ is the so-called transition function between the two coordinate charts. A collection of $\mathcal{C}^{\infty}$ related charts such that every point of $\mathcal{M}$ lies in the domain of at least one chart forms an atlas $\left(\mathcal{C}^{\infty}\right.$ : derivatives of all orders exist and are continuous).

The collection of all such $\mathcal{C}^{\infty}$-related charts forms a maximal atlas. If $\mathcal{M}$ is a space and $A$ its maximal atlas, the set $(\mathcal{M}, A)$ is a $\left(\mathcal{C}^{\infty}\right)$-differentiable manifold. (If for each $\phi$ in the atlas the map $\phi: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ has the same $n$, then the manifold has dimension $n$.)

## Important notions:

- A differentiable function $f: \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ belongs to the algebra $\mathcal{F}=\mathcal{C}^{\infty}(\mathcal{M})$, sum and product of such functions are again in $\mathcal{F}=\mathcal{C}^{\infty}(\mathcal{M})$.
- $\mathcal{F}_{p}$ is the algebra of $\mathcal{C}^{\infty}$-functions defined in any neighbourhood of $p \in \mathcal{M}(f=g$ means $f(q)=$ $g(q)$ in some neighbourhood of $p$ ).
- A differentiable curve is a differentiable map $\gamma: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$.
- Differentiable maps $F: \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}^{\prime}$ are differentiable if $\phi_{2} \circ F \circ \phi_{1}^{-1}$ is a differentiable map for all suitable charts $\phi_{1}$ of $\mathcal{M}$ and $\phi_{2}$ of $\mathcal{M}^{\prime}$.

The notions have to be understood by means of a chart, e.g. $f: \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is differentiable if $x \mapsto$ $f(\underbrace{p(x)}_{\in \mathcal{M}}) \equiv f(x)$ is differentiable. This is independent of the chart representing a neighbourhood of $p$.


Figure 7: Manifold, charts and transition function.

### 12.1 Tangent vectors and tangent spaces

At every point $p$ of a differentiable manifold $\mathcal{M}$ one can introduce a linear space, called tangent space $T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$. A tensor field is a (smooth) map which assigns to each point $p \in \mathcal{M}$ a tensor of a given type on $T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$.

Definition: a $\mathcal{C}^{\infty}$-curve in a manifold $\mathcal{M}$ is a map $\gamma$ of the open interval $I=(a, b) \subset \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ such that for any chart $\phi, \phi \circ \gamma: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is a $\mathcal{C}^{\infty}$ map.

Let $f: \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a smooth function on $\mathcal{M}$. Consider the map $f \circ \gamma: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, t \mapsto f(\gamma(t))$. This has a well-defined derivative: the rate of change of $f$ along the curve. Consider $\underbrace{f \circ \phi^{-1}}_{\substack{\mathbb{R}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \\ x^{i} \rightarrow f\left(x^{i}\right)}} \circ \underbrace{\phi \circ \gamma}_{\substack{I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n} \\ t \rightarrow x^{i}(\gamma(t))}}$ and
use the chain rule:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}(f \circ \gamma)=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}} f\left(x^{i}\right)\right) \frac{\mathrm{d} x^{i}(\gamma(t))}{\mathrm{d} t} \tag{12.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, given a curve $\gamma(t)$ and a function $f$, we can obtain a qualitatively new object $\left.\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d} t}(f \circ \gamma)\right]\right|_{t=t_{0}}$, the rate of change of $f$ along the curve $\gamma(t)$ at $t=t_{0}$.

Definition: The tangent vector $\dot{\gamma}_{p}$ to a curve $\gamma(t)$ at a point $p$ is a map from the set of real functions $f$ defined in a neighbourhood of $p$ to $\mathbb{R}$ defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\gamma}_{p}: f \mapsto\left[\frac{\mathrm{~d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}(f \circ \gamma)\right]_{p}=(f \circ \gamma)^{\bullet}{ }_{p}=\dot{\gamma}_{p}(f) \tag{12.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Given a chart $\phi$ with coordinates $x^{i}$, the components of $\dot{\gamma}_{p}$ with respect to the chart are

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(x^{i} \circ \gamma\right)^{\bullet}=\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t} x^{i}(\gamma(t))\right]_{p} . \tag{12.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

The set of tangent vectors at $p$ is the tangent space $T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$ at $p$.

Theorem: If the dimension of $\mathcal{M}$ is $n$, then $T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$ is a vector space of dimension $n$ (without proof).

We set $\gamma(0)=p(t=0), X_{p}=\dot{\gamma}_{p}$, and $X_{p} f=\dot{\gamma}_{p}(f)$. Eq. 12.3) determines $X_{p}\left(x^{i}\right)$, the components of $X_{p}$ with respect to a given basis:

$$
\begin{align*}
X_{p} f & =[f \circ \gamma]^{\bullet}(0) \\
& =\left[f \circ \phi^{-1} \circ \phi \circ \gamma\right]^{\bullet}(0) \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}\left(f \circ \phi^{-1}\right) \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left(x^{i} \circ \gamma\right)(0)  \tag{12.4}\\
& =\sum_{i}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}} f\left(x^{1}, \ldots, x^{n}\right)\right)\left(X_{p}\left(x^{i}\right)\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

This way we see that

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{p}=\sum_{i}\left(X_{p}\left(x^{i}\right)\right)\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}\right)_{p} \tag{12.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

and so the $\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}\right)_{p}$ span $T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$. From 12.5 we see that $X_{p}\left(x^{i}\right)$ are the components of $X_{p}$ with respect to the given basis $\left(X_{p}\left(x^{i}\right)=X_{p}^{i}\right.$ or $\left.X^{2}\right)$.

Suppose that $f, g$ are real functions on $\mathcal{M}$ and $f g: \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is defined as $f g(p)=f(p) g(p)$. If $X_{p} \in T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$, then (Leibniz rule)

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{p}(f g)=\left(X_{p} f\right) g(p)+f(p)\left(X_{p} g\right) \tag{12.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Notation: $(X f)(p)=X_{p} f, p \in \mathcal{M}$.
$\underline{\text { Basis of } T_{p}(\mathcal{M})}: T_{p}=T_{P}(\mathcal{M})$ has dimension $n$. In any basis $\left(e_{1}, \ldots, e_{n}\right)$ we have $X=X^{i} e_{i}$. Changes of basis are given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{e}_{i}=\phi_{i}^{k} e_{k}, \quad \bar{X}^{i}=\phi_{k}^{i} X^{k} . \tag{12.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The transformations $\phi_{i}{ }^{k}$ and $\phi^{i}{ }_{k}$ are inverse transposed of each other. In particular, $e_{i}=\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}$ is called coordinate basis (with respect to a chart). Upon change of chart $x \mapsto \bar{x}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{i}{ }^{k}=\frac{\partial x^{k}}{\partial \bar{x}^{i}}, \quad \phi^{i}{ }_{k}=\frac{\partial \bar{x}^{i}}{\partial x^{k}} . \tag{12.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Definition: The cotangent space $T_{p}^{*}$ (or dual space $T_{p}^{*}$ of $T_{p}$ ) consists of covectors $\omega \in T_{p}^{*}$, which are linear one-forms $\omega: X \mapsto \omega(X) \equiv<\omega, X>\in \mathbb{R}\left(\omega: T_{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}\right)$.

In particular for functions $f, \mathrm{~d} f: X \mapsto X f$ is an element of $T_{p}^{*}$. The elements $\mathrm{d} f=f_{, i} \mathrm{~d} x^{i}=\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^{i}}\right) \mathrm{d} x^{i}$ form a linear space of dimension $n$, therefore all of $T_{p}^{*}$.

We can define a dual basis $\left(e^{1}, \ldots, e^{n}\right)$ of $T_{p}^{*}: \omega=\omega_{i} e^{i}$. In particular the dual basis of a basis $\left(e_{1}, \ldots, e_{n}\right)$ of $T_{p}$ is given by $<e^{i}, X>=X^{i}$ or $<e^{i}, X^{j} e_{j}>=X^{j} \underbrace{<e^{i}, e_{j}>}_{\delta^{i}{ }_{j}}=X^{i}$. Thus $\omega_{i}=<\omega, e_{i}>$. Upon changing the basis, the $\omega_{i}$ transform like the $e_{i}$ and the $e^{i}$ like the $X^{i}$ (see 12.7). In particular we have for the coordinate basis $e_{i}=\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}, e^{i}=\mathrm{d} x^{i}\left(<e^{i}, e_{j}>=<\mathrm{d} x^{i}, \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j}}>=\delta^{i}{ }_{j}\right)$. The change of basis is:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{x}^{i}} & =\frac{\partial x^{k}}{\partial \bar{x}^{i}} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{k}}=\phi_{i}{ }^{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{k}} \\
\mathrm{~d} \bar{x}^{i} & =\frac{\partial \bar{x}^{i}}{\partial x^{k}} \mathrm{~d} x^{k}=\phi_{k}^{i} \mathrm{~d} x^{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

(Similar to co- and contravariant vectors.)

Tensors on $T_{p}$ are multilinear forms on $T_{p}^{*}$ and $T_{p}$, i.e. a tensor $T$ of type $\binom{1}{2}$ (for short $T \in \otimes_{2}^{1} T_{p}$ ): $T(\omega, X, Y)$ is a trilinear form on $T_{p}^{*} \times T_{p} \times T_{p}$. The tensor product is defined between tensors of any type, i.e. $T(\omega, X, Y)=R(\omega, X) S(Y): T=R \otimes S$. In components:

$$
\begin{equation*}
T(\omega, X, Y)=\underbrace{T\left(e^{i}, e_{j}, e_{k}\right)}_{\equiv T^{i}{ }_{j k}} \underbrace{\omega_{i} X^{j} Y^{k}}_{e_{i}(\omega) e^{j}(X) e^{k}(Y)} \tag{12.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

hence $T=T^{i}{ }_{j k} e_{i} \otimes e^{j} \otimes e^{k}$. Any tensor of any type can therefore be obtained as a linear combination of tensor products $X \otimes \omega \otimes \omega^{\prime}$ with $X \in T_{p}, \omega, \omega^{\prime} \in T_{p}^{*}$. A change of basis can be performed similarly
to the ones for vectors and covectors:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{T}_{j k}^{i}=T^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta \gamma} \phi^{i}{ }_{\alpha} \phi_{j}{ }^{\beta} \phi_{k}{ }^{\gamma} \tag{12.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Trace: any bilinear form $b \in T_{p}^{*} \otimes T_{p}$ determines a linear form $l \in\left(T_{p} \otimes T_{p}^{*}\right)^{*}$ such that $l(X \otimes \omega)=$ $b(X, \omega)$. In particular $\operatorname{tr} T$ is a linear form on tensors $T$ of type $\binom{1}{1}$, defined by $\operatorname{tr}(X \otimes \omega)=\langle\omega, X\rangle$. In components with respect to a dual pair of bases we have: $\operatorname{tr} T=T^{\alpha}{ }_{\alpha}$. Similarly $T^{i}{ }_{j k} \mapsto S_{k}=T^{i}{ }_{i k}$ defines for instance a map from tensors of type $\binom{1}{2}$ to tensors of type $\binom{0}{1}$.

### 12.2 The tangent map

Definition: Let $\varphi$ be a differentiable map: $\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \overline{\mathcal{M}}$ and let $p \in \mathcal{M}, \bar{p}=\varphi(p)$. Then $\varphi$ induces a linear map ("push-forward"):

$$
\varphi_{*}: T_{p}(\mathcal{M}) \rightarrow T_{\bar{p}}(\overline{\mathcal{M}}),
$$

which we can describe in two ways:
(a) For any $\bar{f} \in \mathcal{F}_{\bar{p}}(\overline{\mathcal{M}})\left(\mathcal{F}\right.$ : space of all smooth functions on $\mathcal{M}($ or $\overline{\mathcal{M}})$, that is $\mathcal{C}^{\infty}$ map $\left.f: \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}\right)$ :

$$
\left(\varphi_{*} X\right) \bar{f}=X(\bar{f} \circ \varphi)
$$

(b) Let $\gamma$ be a representative of $X\left(X=\dot{\gamma}_{p}\right.$, see 12.2) and 12.3). Then let $\bar{\gamma}=\varphi \circ \gamma$ be a representative of $\varphi_{*} X$. This agrees with (a) since $\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d} t} \bar{f}(\bar{\gamma}(t))\right|_{t=0}=\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d} t}(\bar{f} \circ \varphi)(\gamma(t))\right|_{t=0}$.
With respect to bases $\left(e_{1}, \ldots, e_{n}\right)$ of $T_{p}$ and $\left(\bar{e}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{e}_{n}\right)$ of $T_{\bar{p}}(\overline{\mathcal{M}})$, this reads $\bar{X}=\varphi_{*} X: \bar{X}^{i}=\left(\varphi_{*}\right)^{i}{ }_{k} X^{k}$ with $\left(\varphi_{*}\right)^{i}{ }_{k}=<\bar{e}^{i}, \varphi_{*} e_{k}>$ or in case of coordinate bases: $\left(\varphi_{*}\right)^{i}{ }_{k}=\frac{\partial \bar{x}^{i}}{\partial x^{k}}$.

Definition: The adjoint map (or "pull-back") $\varphi^{*}$ of $\varphi_{*}$ is defined as $\varphi^{*}: T_{\bar{p}}^{*} \rightarrow T_{p}^{*}, \bar{\omega} \mapsto \varphi^{*} \bar{\omega}(=\omega$ in $\left.T_{p}^{*}\right)$ with $\left\langle\varphi^{*} \bar{\omega}, X\right\rangle=\left\langle\bar{\omega}, \varphi_{*} X\right\rangle$. The same result is obtained from the definition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi^{*}: \mathrm{d} \bar{f} \mapsto \mathrm{~d}(\bar{f} \circ \varphi), \quad \bar{f} \in \mathcal{F}(\overline{\mathcal{M}}) . \tag{12.10a}
\end{equation*}
$$

In components, $\omega=\varphi^{*} \bar{\omega}$ reads $\omega_{k}=\bar{\omega}_{i}\left(\varphi_{*}\right)^{i}{ }_{k}$.
Consider (local) diffeomorphisms, i.e. maps $\varphi$ such that $\varphi^{-1}$ exists in a neighbourhood of $\bar{p}$. Note that $\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{M}=\operatorname{dim} \overline{\mathcal{M}}$ and $\operatorname{det}\left(\frac{\partial \bar{x}^{i}}{\partial x^{i}}\right) \neq 0$. Then $\varphi_{*}$ and $\varphi^{*}$, as defined above, are invertible and may be extended to tensors of arbitrary types.

Example: tensor of type $\binom{1}{1}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(\varphi_{*} T\right)(\bar{\omega}, \bar{X})=T(\underbrace{\varphi^{*} \bar{\omega}}_{\omega}, \underbrace{\varphi_{*}^{-1} \bar{X}}_{X}), \\
& \left(\varphi^{*} \bar{T}\right)(\omega, X)=\bar{T}(\underbrace{\left(\varphi^{*}\right)^{-1} \omega}_{\bar{\omega}}, \underbrace{\varphi_{*} X}_{\bar{X}}) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Here, $\varphi_{*}$ and $\varphi^{*}$ are the inverse of each other and we have

$$
\begin{align*}
\varphi_{*}(T \otimes S) & =\left(\varphi_{*} T\right) \otimes\left(\varphi_{*} S\right),  \tag{12.11}\\
\operatorname{tr}\left(\varphi_{*} T\right) & =\varphi_{*}(\operatorname{tr} T),
\end{align*}
$$

and similarly for $\varphi^{*}$. In components $\bar{T}=\varphi_{*} T$ reads

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{T}_{k}^{i}=T^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta} \frac{\partial \bar{x}^{i}}{\partial x^{\alpha}} \frac{\partial x^{\beta}}{\partial \bar{x}^{k}} \quad \text { (in a coordinate basis). } \tag{12.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is formally the same as for transformation 12.10 when changing basis.

## 13 Vector and tensor fields

Definition: If to every point $p$ of a differentiable manifold $\mathcal{M}$ a tangent vector $X_{p} \in T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$ is assigned, then we call the map $X: p \mapsto X_{p}$ a vector field on $\mathcal{M}$.

Given a coordinate system $x^{i}$ and associated basis $\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}\right)_{p}$ for each $T_{p}(\mathcal{M}), X_{p}$ has components $X_{p}^{i}$ with $X_{p}=X_{p}^{i}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}\right)_{p}$ and $X_{p}^{i}=X_{p}\left(x^{i}\right)$ (see 12.5). Eq. 12.8) shows how $X_{p}^{i}$ transform under coordinate transformations. The quantity $X f$ is called the derivative of $f$ with respect to the vector field $X$. The following rules apply:

$$
\begin{align*}
X(f+g) & =X f+X g  \tag{13.1}\\
X(f g) & =(X f) g+f(X g) \quad \text { (Leibnitz rule })
\end{align*}
$$

The vector fields on $\mathcal{M}$ form a linear space on which the following operations are defined as well:

$$
\begin{gathered}
X \mapsto f X \quad \text { (multiplication by } f \in \mathcal{F}), \\
X, Y \mapsto[X, Y]=X Y-Y X \quad \text { (commutator). }
\end{gathered}
$$

[ $X, Y$ ], unlike $X Y$, satisfies the Leibniz rule 13.1. The components of the commutator of two vector fields $X, Y$ relative to a local coordinate basis can be obtained by its action on $x^{i}$. Thus using $X=X^{i} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}$ and $Y=Y^{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{k}}$ we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
{[X, Y]^{j} } & =(X Y-Y X) x^{j} \\
Y x^{j} & =Y^{k} \frac{\partial x^{j}}{\partial x^{k}}=Y^{k} \delta^{j}{ }_{k}=Y^{j} \\
X Y^{j} & =X^{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{k}}\left(Y^{j}\right)=X^{k} \underbrace{x^{k}}_{\frac{\partial Y}{}{ }^{Y^{j}}{ }_{, k}} \\
\Rightarrow X Y^{j}-Y X^{j} & =X^{k} Y^{j}{ }_{, k}-Y^{k} X^{j}{ }_{, k}
\end{aligned}
$$

In a local coordinate basis, the bracket $\left[\partial_{k}, \partial_{j}\right]$ clearly vanishes since $X^{k}=1$ and $Y^{k}=1$, thus $X_{, j}^{k}=0$ and $Y_{, j}^{k}=0$.

The Jacobi identity holds:

$$
\begin{equation*}
[X,[Y, Z]]+[Y,[Z, X]]+[Z,[X, Y]]=0 \tag{13.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Definition: Let $T_{p}(\mathcal{M})_{s}^{r}$ be the set of all tensors of rank $(r, s)$ defined on $T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$ (contravariant of rank $r$, covariant of rank $s$. If we assign to every $p \in \mathcal{M}$ a tensor $t_{p} \in T_{p}(\mathcal{M})_{s}^{r}$, then the map $t: p \mapsto t_{p}$ defines a tensor field of type $\binom{r}{s}$.

Algebraic operations on tensor fields are defined point-wise; for instance the sum of two tensor fields is defined by $(t+\tilde{s})_{p}=t_{p}+\tilde{s}_{p}$ where $t, \tilde{s} \in T_{p}(\mathcal{M})_{s}^{r}$. Tensor products and contractions of tensor fields are defined analogously. Multiplication by a function $f \in \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{M})$ is given by $(f t)_{p}=f(p) t_{p}$. In a neighbourhood $\mathcal{U}$ of $p$, having coordinates $\left(x^{1}, \ldots, x^{n}\right)$ a tensor field can be expanded in the form

$$
t=\underbrace{t^{i_{1} \ldots i_{r}} j_{j_{1} \ldots j_{s}}}_{\begin{array}{c}
\text { components of } t \text { relative }  \tag{13.3}\\
\text { to the coordinate system } \\
\left(x^{1}, \ldots, x^{n}\right)
\end{array}}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i_{1}}} \otimes \ldots \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i_{r}}}\right) \otimes\left(\mathrm{d} x^{j_{1}} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathrm{~d} x^{j_{s}}\right)
$$

If the coordinates are transformed to $\left(\bar{x}^{1}, \ldots, \bar{x}^{n}\right)$ the components of $t$ transform according to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{t}^{i_{1} \ldots i_{r}}{ }_{j_{1} \ldots j_{s}} \equiv t^{k_{1} \ldots k_{r}}{ }_{l_{1} \ldots l_{s}} \frac{\partial \bar{x}^{i_{1}}}{\partial x^{k_{1}}} \ldots \frac{\partial \bar{x}^{i_{r}}}{\partial x^{k_{r}}} \frac{\partial x^{l_{1}}}{\partial \bar{x}^{j_{1}}} \ldots \frac{\partial x^{l_{s}}}{\partial \bar{x}^{j_{s}}} . \tag{13.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

(We shall consider $C^{\infty}$ tensor fields). Covariant tensors of order 1 are also called one-forms. The set of tensor fields of type $\binom{r}{s}$ is denoted by $\mathcal{T}_{s}^{r}(\mathcal{M})$.

Definition: A pseudo-Riemannian metric on a differentiable manifold $\mathcal{M}$ is a tensor field $g \in \mathcal{T}_{2}^{0}(\mathcal{M})$ having the properties:
(i) $g(X, Y)=g(Y, X)$ for all $X, Y$
(ii) For every $p \in \mathcal{M}, g_{p}$ is a non-degenerate $(\neq 0)$ bilinear form on $T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$. This means that $g_{p}(X, Y)=0$ for all $X \in T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$ if and only if $Y=0$.

The tensor field $g \in \mathcal{T}_{2}^{0}(\mathcal{M})$ is a (proper) Riemannian metric if $g_{p}$ is positive definite at every point $p$.

Definition: A (pseudo-)Riemannian manifold is a differentiable manifold $\mathcal{M}$, together with a (pseudo-) Riemannian metric $g$.

### 13.1 Flows and generating vector fields

A flow is a 1-parametric group of diffeomorphisms: $\varphi_{t}: \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}, s, t \in \mathbb{R}$ with $\varphi_{t} \circ \varphi_{s}=\varphi_{t+s}$. In particular $\varphi_{0}=\mathrm{id}$. Moreover, the orbits (or integral curves) of any point $p \in \mathcal{M}, t \mapsto \varphi_{t}(p) \equiv \gamma(t)$ shall be differentiable. A flow determines a vector field $X$ by means of

$$
\begin{equation*}
X f=\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left(f \circ \varphi_{t}\right)\right|_{t=0} \tag{13.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. $X_{p}=\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d} t} \gamma(t)\right|_{t=0}=\dot{\gamma}(0)$ (see 12.2) and 12.3). $\dot{\gamma}(0)$ is the tangent vector to $\gamma$ at the point $p=\gamma(0)$. At the point $\gamma(t)$ we have then

$$
\dot{\gamma}(t)=\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t} \varphi_{t}(p)=\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} s}\left(\varphi_{s} \circ \varphi_{t}\right)(p)\right|_{s=0}=X_{\varphi_{t}(p)}
$$

i.e. $\gamma(t)$ solves the ordinary differential equation:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\gamma}(t)=X_{\gamma(t)}, \quad \gamma(0)=p \tag{13.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

The generating vector field determines the flow uniquely. Not always does 13.6 admit global solutions (i.e. for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ), however for most purposes, "local flows" are good enough.

## 14 Lie derivative

The derivative of a vector field $V$ rests on the comparison of $V_{p}$ and $V_{p^{\prime}}$ at nearby points $p, p^{\prime}$. Since $V_{p} \in T_{p}$ and $V_{p^{\prime}} \in T_{p^{\prime}}$ belong to different spaces their difference can be taken only after $V_{p^{\prime}}$ has been transported to $V_{p}$. This can be achieved by means of the tangent map $\varphi_{*}$ (Lie transport). The Lie derivative $L_{X} R$ of a tensor field $R$ in direction of a vector field $X$ is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{X} R=\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t} \varphi_{t}^{*} R\right|_{t=0} \tag{14.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

or more explicitly $\left(L_{X} R\right)_{p}=\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d} t} \varphi_{t}^{*} R_{\varphi_{t}(p)}\right|_{t=0}$. Here $\varphi_{t}$ is the (local) flow generated by $X$, where $\varphi_{t}^{*} R_{\varphi_{t}(p)}$ is a tensor on $T_{p}$ depending on $t$.


Figure 8: Illustration of the Lie derivative

In order to express $L_{X}$ in components we write $\varphi_{t}$ in a chart: $\varphi_{t}: x \mapsto \bar{x}(t)$, and linearize it for small $t: \bar{x}^{i}=x^{i}+t X^{i}(x)+\mathcal{O}\left(t^{2}\right), x^{i}=\bar{x}^{i}-t X^{i}(\bar{x})+\mathcal{O}\left(t^{2}\right)$, thus $\frac{\partial^{2} \bar{x}^{i}}{\partial x^{k} \partial t}=-\frac{\partial^{2} x^{i}}{\partial \bar{x}^{k} \partial t}=X^{i}{ }_{, k}$ at $t=0$.

As an example, let $R$ be of type $\binom{1}{1}$. By 12.12 we have $\left(\varphi_{t}^{*} R\right)^{i}{ }_{j}(x)=R^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta}(\bar{x}) \frac{\partial x^{i}}{\partial \bar{x}^{\alpha}} \frac{\partial \bar{x}^{\beta}}{\partial x^{j}}$. Taking (according to (14.1)) a derivative with respect to $t$ at $t=0$ yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(L_{X} R\right)^{i}{ }_{j}=R^{i}{ }_{j, k} X^{k}-R^{\alpha}{ }_{j} X_{, \alpha}^{i}+R^{i}{ }_{\beta} X^{\beta}{ }_{, j} \tag{14.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

(first term: $\left.\underbrace{\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{x}^{k}} R^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta}(\bar{x})}_{R^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta, k}(\bar{x})} \underbrace{\frac{\partial \bar{x}^{k}}{\partial t}}_{X^{k}} \frac{\partial x^{i}}{\partial \bar{x}^{\alpha}} \frac{\partial \bar{x}^{\beta}}{\partial x^{j}}\right|_{t=0}=R^{i}{ }_{j, k} X^{k}$ ).

Properties of $L_{X}$ :
(a) $L_{X}$ is a linear map from tensor fields to tensor fields of the same type.
(b) $L_{X}(\operatorname{tr} T)=\operatorname{tr}\left(L_{X} T\right)$
(c) $L_{X}(T \otimes S)=\left(L_{X} T\right) \otimes S+T \otimes\left(L_{X} S\right)$
(d) $L_{X} f=X f \quad(f \in \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{M}))$
(e) $L_{X} Y=[X, Y] \quad$ ( $Y$ vector field)
(proof: (a) follows from 14.1), (b) and (c) from 12.11, (d) from 13.5, whereas (e) is more involved).

Further properties of $L_{X}$ : if $X, Y$ are vector fields and $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$, then
(i) $L_{X+Y}=L_{X}+L_{Y}, \quad L_{\lambda X}=\lambda L_{X}$
(ii) $L_{[X, Y]}=\left[L_{X}, L_{Y}\right]=L_{X} \circ L_{Y}-L_{Y} \circ L_{X}$
"Proof" of (ii): Apply it to $f \in \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{M})$,

$$
\left[L_{X}, L_{Y}\right] f=L_{X} \circ L_{Y} f-L_{Y} \circ L_{X} f=L_{X}(Y f)-L_{Y}(X f)=X Y f-Y X f=[X, Y] f=L_{[X, Y]} f
$$

Next apply it on a vector field $Z$ :

$$
\left[L_{X}, L_{Y}\right] Z \underset{(e)}{=}[X,[Y, Z]]-[Y,[X, Z]] \underset{\substack{\text { Jacobi } \\ \text { identity }}}{=}[[X, Y], Z]=L_{[X, Y]} Z
$$

For higher rank tensors the derivation follows from the use of (c).
If $[X, Y]=0$ then $L_{X} L_{Y}=L_{Y} L_{X}$ and for $\phi$ and $\psi$, which are the flows generated by $X$ and $Y$, one finds: $\phi_{s} \circ \psi_{t}=\psi_{t} \circ \phi_{s}$.

## 15 Differential forms

Definition: A $p$-form $\Omega$ is a totally antisymmetric tensor field of type $\binom{0}{p}$

$$
\Omega\left(X_{\pi(1)}, \ldots, X_{\pi(p)}\right)=(\operatorname{sign} \pi) \Omega\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{p}\right)
$$

for any permutation $\pi$ of $\{1, \ldots, p\}$ ( $\pi \in S_{p}$ (group of permutations)) with $\operatorname{sign} \pi$ being its parity. For $p>\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{M}, \Omega \equiv 0$. Any tensor field of type $\binom{0}{p}$ can be antisymmetrized by means of the operation $\mathcal{A}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\mathcal{A} T)\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{p}\right)=\frac{1}{p!} \sum_{\pi \in S_{p}}(\operatorname{sign} \pi) T\left(X_{\pi(1)}, \ldots, X_{\pi(p)}\right) \tag{15.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\mathcal{A}^{2}=\mathcal{A}$. The exterior product of a $p_{1}$-form $\Omega^{1}$ with a $p_{2}$-form $\Omega^{2}$ is the $\left(p_{1}+p_{2}\right)$-form:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Omega^{1} \wedge \Omega^{2}=\frac{\left(p_{1}+p_{2}\right)!}{p_{1}!p_{2}!} \mathcal{A}\left(\Omega^{1} \otimes \Omega^{2}\right) \tag{15.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Properties:

- $\Omega^{1} \wedge \Omega^{2}=(-1)^{p_{1} p_{2}} \Omega^{2} \wedge \Omega^{1}$
- $\Omega^{1} \wedge\left(\Omega^{2} \wedge \Omega^{3}\right)=\left(\Omega^{1} \wedge \Omega^{2}\right) \wedge \Omega^{3}=\frac{\left(p_{1}+p_{2}+p_{3}\right)!}{p_{1}!p_{2}!p_{3}!} \mathcal{A}\left(\Omega^{1} \otimes \Omega^{2} \otimes \Omega^{3}\right)$

The components in a local basis $\left(e^{1}, \ldots, e^{n}\right)$ of 1-forms are

$$
\begin{align*}
\Omega & =\Omega_{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}} e^{i_{1}} \otimes \ldots \otimes e^{i_{p}}=\mathcal{A} \Omega \\
& =\Omega_{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}} \mathcal{A}\left(e^{i_{1}} \otimes \ldots \otimes e^{i_{p}}\right) \\
& =\sum_{i_{1}=1}^{n} \ldots \sum_{i_{p}=1}^{n} \Omega_{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}} \frac{1}{p!} e^{i_{1}} \wedge \ldots \wedge e^{i_{p}} \\
& =\sum_{1 \leq i_{1}<\ldots<i_{p} \leq n} \Omega_{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}} e^{i_{1}} \wedge \ldots \wedge e^{i_{p}} \tag{15.3}
\end{align*}
$$

A covariant tensor of rank $p$, which is antisymmetric under exchange of any pair of indices (i.e. is a $p$-form), in $n$ dimensions has $\binom{n}{p}=\frac{n!}{(n-p)!p!}$ independent components.

Examples:

- For 1-forms $A, B$ (vector fields) we have

$$
(A \wedge B)_{i k}=A_{i} B_{k}-A_{k} B_{i}=(-1)(B \wedge A)_{i k}
$$

- For a 2-form $A$ and a 1-form $B$

$$
\begin{equation*}
(A \wedge B)_{i k l}=A_{i k} B_{l}+A_{k l} B_{i}+A_{l i} B_{k} \tag{15.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

since

$$
\begin{aligned}
A \wedge B & =\frac{(1+2)!}{1!2!} \mathcal{A}(A \otimes B) \\
& =\frac{3!}{1!2!}\left(A_{i k} B_{l}\right) \frac{1}{3!} e^{i} \wedge e^{k} \wedge e^{l} \\
& =\frac{1}{2}\left(A_{i k} B_{l}\right) e^{i} \wedge e^{k} \wedge e^{l} \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{3}\left(A_{i k} B_{l}+\text { cyclic permutations }\right) e^{i} \wedge e^{k} \wedge e^{l} \\
& =\left(A_{i k} B_{l}+\text { cyclic permutations }\right) \frac{1}{3!} e^{i} \wedge e^{k} \wedge e^{l} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus by comparing with 15.3 we get 15.4 .

### 15.1 Exterior derivative of a differential form

The derivative $\mathrm{d} f$ of a 0 -form $f \in \mathcal{F}$ is the 1-form $\mathrm{d} f(X)=X f$ : the argument $X$ (vector) acts as a derivation. In a local coordinate basis: $\mathrm{d} f=\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^{i}} \mathrm{~d} x^{i}$. The exterior derivative is performed by an operator d applied to forms, converting $p$-forms to $(p+1)$-forms. The derivative $\mathrm{d} \Omega$ of a 1 -form $\Omega$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} \Omega\left(X_{1}, X_{2}\right)=X_{1} \Omega\left(X_{2}\right)-X_{2} \Omega\left(X_{1}\right)-\Omega\left(\left[X_{1}, X_{2}\right]\right) \tag{15.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression is verified as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& X_{1} \Omega\left(X_{2}\right)=X_{1} \underbrace{\left\langle\Omega, X_{2}\right\rangle}_{1 \text {-form }}=X_{1}^{i} \underbrace{\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}}_{, i}\left(\Omega_{k} X_{2}^{k}\right)=X_{1}^{i} \Omega_{k, i} X_{2}^{k}+X_{1}^{i} \Omega_{k} X_{2, i}^{k}, \\
& X_{2} \Omega\left(X_{1}\right)=X_{2}^{k} \Omega_{i, k} X_{1}^{i}+X_{2}^{k} \Omega_{i} X_{1, k}^{i} \\
& \Omega\left(\left[X_{1}, X_{2}\right]\right)=\left\langle\Omega, X_{1} X_{2}-X_{2} X_{1}\right\rangle=\Omega_{i}\left(X_{1} X_{2}-X_{2} X_{1}\right)^{i}=\Omega_{i}\left(X_{1}^{k} X_{2, k}^{i}-X_{2}^{k} X_{1, k}^{i}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

then

$$
\mathrm{d} \Omega\left(X_{1}, X_{2}\right)=\left(\Omega_{k, i}-\Omega_{i, k}\right) X_{1}^{i} X_{2}^{k}
$$

This is manifestly a 2 -form (the coefficient also fits the expectations: $\frac{1}{2!} \frac{(1+1)!}{1!1!}=1$ ). One can easily verify that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} \Omega\left(f X_{1}, X_{2}\right)=f \mathrm{~d} \Omega\left(X_{1}, X_{2}\right) \tag{15.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $\Omega \wedge f=f \Omega$ (as $f$ is a 0 -form), the product rule

$$
\mathrm{d}(\Omega \wedge f)=\mathrm{d} \Omega \wedge f-\Omega \wedge \mathrm{d} f
$$

applies, as one can verify

$$
\mathrm{d}(\Omega \wedge f)\left(X_{1}, X_{2}\right) \underset{\underline{15.5}}{=} X_{1}(f \Omega)\left(X_{2}\right)-X_{2}(f \Omega)\left(X_{1}\right)-(f \Omega)\left(\left[X_{1}, X_{2}\right]\right)
$$

and

$$
X_{1}(f \Omega)\left(X_{2}\right)=X_{1}^{i} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}\left(f \Omega_{k} X_{2}^{k}\right)=\underbrace{f X_{1}^{i} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}\left(\Omega_{k} X_{2}^{k}\right)}_{f X_{1} \Omega\left(X_{2}\right)}+\underbrace{X_{1}^{i} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^{i}} \Omega_{k} X_{2}^{k}}_{\mathrm{d} f\left(X_{1}\right) \Omega\left(X_{2}\right)}
$$

So

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d}(f \wedge \Omega)\left(X_{1}, X_{2}\right)=\underbrace{f \mathrm{~d} \Omega\left(X_{1}, X_{2}\right)}_{\mathrm{d} \Omega \wedge f}+\underbrace{\Omega\left(X_{2}\right) \mathrm{d} f\left(X_{1}\right)-\Omega\left(X_{1}\right) \mathrm{d} f\left(X_{2}\right)}_{-\Omega \wedge \mathrm{d} f} \tag{15.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover we have $\mathrm{d}^{2} f=0$, since

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathrm{d}^{2} f\left(X_{1}, X_{2}\right) \stackrel{\underset{1}{ } \stackrel{(15.5}{=}}{ } \quad X_{1} \mathrm{~d} f\left(X_{2}\right)-X_{2} \mathrm{~d} f\left(X_{1}\right)-\mathrm{d} f\left(\left[X_{1}, X_{2}\right]\right) \\
\quad=\quad X_{1} X_{2} f-X_{2} X_{1} f-\left[X_{1}, X_{2}\right] f=0 \tag{15.8}
\end{gather*}
$$

The generalization of the definition to a $p$-form $\Omega$ gives

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{d} \Omega\left(X_{1}, . ., X_{p+1}\right) & =\sum_{i=1}^{p+1}(-1)^{i-1} X_{i} \Omega\left(X_{1}, . ., \hat{X}_{i}, . ., X_{p+1}\right) \\
& +\sum_{i<j}^{p+1}(-1)^{i+j} \Omega\left(\left[X_{i}, X_{j}\right], X_{1}, . ., \hat{X}_{i}, . ., \hat{X}_{j}, . ., X_{p+1}\right) \tag{15.9}
\end{align*}
$$

where ${ }^{\wedge}$ means omission, e.g. $\left(X_{1}, \hat{X}_{2}, X_{3}\right)=\left(X_{1}, X_{3}\right)$.

One can show that the following properties hold:
(a) d is a linear map from $p$-forms to $p+1$-forms,
(b) $\mathrm{d}\left(\Omega^{1} \wedge \Omega^{2}\right)=\mathrm{d} \Omega^{1} \wedge \Omega^{2}+(-1)^{p_{1}} \Omega^{1} \wedge \mathrm{~d} \Omega^{2}$,
(c) $\mathrm{d}^{2}=0$, i.e. $\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{d} \Omega)=0$,
(d) $\mathrm{d} f(X)=X f(f \in \mathcal{F})$,

By means of (a)-(d) we have an alternative definition of d. By eq. 15.3 we have with respect to a coordinate basis

$$
\begin{align*}
& \Omega=\frac{1}{p!} \Omega_{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}} \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{1}} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{p}}, \text { and hence }  \tag{15.10a}\\
& \mathrm{d} \Omega \underbrace{=}_{\mathrm{dd} x^{i_{p}}=0} \frac{1}{p!} \mathrm{d} \Omega_{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}} \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{1}} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{p}} \tag{15.10b}
\end{align*}
$$

Components:

$$
\begin{align*}
p!\mathrm{d} \Omega & =\Omega_{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}, i_{0}} \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{0}} \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{1}} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{p}} \\
& =-\Omega_{i_{0} i_{2} \ldots i_{p}, i_{1}} \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{0}} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{p}} \\
& =(-1)^{k} \Omega_{i_{0} \ldots \hat{i}_{k} \ldots i_{p}, i_{k}} \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{0}} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{p}} \quad(k=0, \ldots, p) \\
\Rightarrow \mathrm{d} \Omega & =\underbrace{\frac{1}{p!} \frac{1}{p+1}}_{\frac{1}{(p+1)!}} \underbrace{\sum_{k=0}^{p}(-1)^{k} \Omega_{i_{0} \ldots \hat{i}_{k} \ldots i_{p}, i_{k}}}_{(\mathrm{d} \Omega)_{i_{0} \ldots i_{p}}^{p}} \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{0}} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{p}} \tag{15.11}
\end{align*}
$$

Examples:

- $p=1$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\mathrm{d} \Omega)_{i k}=\Omega_{k, i}-\Omega_{i, k} \tag{15.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

- $p=2$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\mathrm{d} \Omega)_{i k l}=\Omega_{i k, l}+\Omega_{k l, i}+\Omega_{l i, k} \tag{15.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider a $\operatorname{map} \varphi: \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \overline{\mathcal{M}}$ and $\varphi^{*}: T_{\bar{p}}^{*}(\overline{\mathcal{M}}) \rightarrow T_{p}^{*}(\mathcal{M})$; then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi^{*} \circ \mathrm{~d}=\mathrm{d} \circ \varphi^{*} \tag{15.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

A "proof" is found by using 15.10 , 12.11 and property (b). It suffices to verify 15.14 on 0 -forms and 1 -forms. For 0 -forms $\bar{f}, \sqrt{15.14}$ is identical to (12.10a). For 1 -forms which are differentials $\mathrm{d} \bar{f}$, due to (c) we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\left(\varphi^{*} \circ \mathrm{~d}\right)(\mathrm{d} \bar{f})=0 \quad\left(\mathrm{~d}^{2} \bar{f}=0\right), \\
&\left(\mathrm{d} \circ \varphi^{*}\right)(\mathrm{d} \bar{f})=\mathrm{d}\left(\varphi^{*} \circ \mathrm{~d} \bar{f}\right) \substack{(12.10 a) \\
\left(\varphi^{*} \circ \mathrm{~d} \bar{f}\right) \\
\\
\\
=\mathrm{d}(\bar{\circ} \circ \varphi)}
\end{aligned} \mathrm{d}(\mathrm{~d}(\bar{f} \circ \varphi))=\mathrm{d}^{2}(\bar{f} \circ \varphi)=0 .
$$

Setting $\varphi=\varphi_{t}$ (the flow generated by $X$ ) and forming 14.1) $\left(L_{X} R=\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d} t} \varphi_{t}^{*} R\right|_{t=0}\right)$, one obtains the infinitesimal version of (15.14):

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{X} \circ \mathrm{~d}=\mathrm{d} \circ L_{X} \tag{15.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Definition: A $p$-form $\omega$ with

- $\omega=\mathrm{d} \eta$ is exact
- $\mathrm{d} \omega=0$ is closed

An exact $p$-form is always closed $\left(\mathrm{d}^{2} \eta=0\right)$, but the converse is not generally true (Poincaré lemma gives conditions under which the converse is valid) ${ }^{5}$

[^4]
## The integral of an $n$-form:

$\mathcal{M}$ is orientable within an atlas of "positively oriented" charts, if det $\left(\frac{\partial \bar{x}^{i}}{\partial x^{j}}\right)>0$ for any change of coordinates. For an $n$-form $\omega(n=\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{M})$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\omega=\omega_{i_{1} \ldots i_{n}} \frac{1}{n!} \mathrm{d} x^{i_{1}} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{i_{n}}=\underbrace{\omega_{1} \ldots n}_{\omega(x)} \mathrm{d} x^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{n} \tag{15.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

is determined by the single component $\omega(x)$; under a change of coordinates $\omega(x)$ transforms like

$$
\bar{\omega}(\bar{x})=\bar{\omega}_{1 \ldots n}=\underbrace{\omega_{i_{1} \ldots i_{n}}}_{\begin{array}{c}
\text { totally }  \tag{15.17}\\
\text { antisymmetric }
\end{array}} \frac{\partial x^{i_{1}}}{\partial \bar{x}^{1}} \cdots \frac{\partial x^{i_{n}}}{\partial \bar{x}^{n}}=\omega(x) \operatorname{det}\left(\frac{\partial x^{i}}{\partial \bar{x}^{j}}\right) .
$$

The integral of a $n$-form is defined as follows:

$$
\left.\int_{\mathcal{M}} \omega=\int_{\mathcal{U}} \mathrm{d} x^{1} \ldots \mathrm{~d} x^{n} \omega\left(x^{1}, \ldots, x^{n}\right) \quad \text { (if the support of } \omega \text { is contained in a chart } \mathcal{U}\right) .
$$

This integral is independent of the choice of coordinates, since in different coordinates

$$
\left.\int \mathrm{d} x^{1} \ldots \mathrm{~d} x^{n} \omega(x)=\int \mathrm{d} \bar{x}^{1} \ldots \mathrm{~d} \bar{x}^{n} \omega(x)\left|\operatorname{det}\left(\frac{\partial x^{i}}{\partial \bar{x}^{j}}\right)\right| \text { and 15.17) applies. }\right]^{8}
$$

### 15.2 Stokes theorem

Let $D$ be a region in a $n$ dimensional differentiable manifold $\mathcal{M}$. The boundary $\partial D$ consists of those $p \in D$ whose image $x$ in some chart satisfies e.g. $x^{1}=0$. One can show that $\partial D$ is a closed $(n-1)$ dimension submanifold of $\mathcal{M}$. If $\mathcal{M}$ is orientable then $\partial D$ is also orientable. $D$ shall have a smooth boundary and be such that $\bar{D}$ is compact. Then for every $(n-1)$-form $\omega$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{D} \mathrm{~d} \omega=\int_{\partial D} \omega \tag{15.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 15.3 The inner product of a $p$-form

Definition: Let $X$ be a vector field on $\mathcal{M}$. For any $p$-form $\Omega$ we define the inner product as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(i_{X} \Omega\right)\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{p-1}\right) \equiv \Omega\left(X, X_{1}, \ldots, X_{p-1}\right) \tag{15.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

(and zero if $p=0$ ).

## Properties:

[^5](a) $i_{X}$ is a linear map from $p$-forms to $(p-1)$-forms,
(b) $i_{X}\left(\Omega^{1} \wedge \Omega^{2}\right)=\left(i_{X} \Omega^{1}\right) \wedge \Omega^{2}+(-1)^{p_{1}} \Omega^{1} \wedge\left(i_{X} \Omega^{2}\right)$,
(c) $i_{X}{ }^{2}=0$,
(d) $i_{X} \mathrm{~d} f=X f=\langle\mathrm{d} f, X\rangle$ with $f \in \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{M})$,
(e) $L_{X}=i_{X} \circ \mathrm{~d}+\mathrm{d} \circ i_{X}$.

Proof of (e): for 0 -forms $f$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& L_{X} f=X f \\
& i_{X} \circ \mathrm{~d} f+\underset{=0}{\operatorname{doi}_{X} f}=i_{X} d f=X f
\end{aligned}
$$

and for 1-forms $\mathrm{d} f$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& L_{X} \mathrm{~d} f \underset{\substack{L_{X}}}{=} \stackrel{15.15}{\circ \mathrm{~d}=\mathrm{d} \circ L_{X}} \mathrm{~d}\left(L_{X} f\right)=\mathrm{d}(X f), \\
& i_{X} \circ \underset{=0}{\mathrm{~d} d} f \\
& =\mathrm{d} \circ i_{X} \mathrm{~d} f=\mathrm{d}(X f)
\end{aligned}
$$

## Application: Gauss theorem

Let $X$ be a vector field. Then $\mathrm{d}\left(i_{X} \eta\right)$ is an $n$-form with $\operatorname{dim} M=n . \eta$ is an $n$-form, and if $\eta_{p} \neq 0 \forall p \in$ $\mathcal{M}$, then $\eta$ is a "volume form". A function $\operatorname{div}_{\eta} X \in \mathcal{F}$ is defined through

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\operatorname{div}_{\eta} X\right) \eta=\mathrm{d}\left(i_{X} \eta\right)=L_{X} \eta \eta^{9} \tag{15.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can apply Stokes theorem since $\mathrm{d}\left(i_{X} \eta\right)$ is an $n$-form and thus $i_{X} \eta$ an $(n-1)$-form:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{D} \mathrm{~d}\left(i_{X} \eta\right)=\int_{D}\left(\operatorname{div}_{\eta} X\right) \eta=\int_{\partial D} i_{X} \eta . \tag{15.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

The standard volume form $\eta$ is given by $\eta=\sqrt{|g|} \mathrm{d} x^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{n}$.

[^6]
## Expression for $\operatorname{div}_{\eta} X$ in local coordinates:

Let $\eta=a(x) \mathrm{d} x^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{n}, X=X^{i} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}$. Then since $\left(\operatorname{div}_{\eta} X\right) \eta=L_{X} \eta$, we have (using property (c) of the Lie derivative):

$$
L_{X} \eta=(X a) \mathrm{d} x^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{n}+a \sum_{i=1}^{n} \mathrm{~d} x^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d}\left(X x^{i}\right) \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{d} x^{n}
$$

Since $\mathrm{d}\left(X x^{i}\right)=\mathrm{d}(X^{k} \underbrace{\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{k}} x^{i}}_{\delta_{k}^{i}})=\mathrm{d} X^{i}(x)=X^{i},{ }_{, j} \mathrm{~d} x^{j}$, but $\mathrm{d} x^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{j} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{n} \neq 0$ only if $j=i$ (otherwise we have two identical $\mathrm{d} x^{i}$ ) we find

$$
\begin{align*}
L_{X} \eta & =\underbrace{X a}_{X^{i} \frac{\partial a}{\partial x^{i}}} \mathrm{~d} x^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{n}+a \sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{, i}^{i} \mathrm{~d} x^{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge \mathrm{~d} x^{n} \\
& =\left(X^{i} a_{, i}+a X^{i}{ }_{, i}\right) \frac{1}{a} \eta \\
\Rightarrow \operatorname{div}_{\eta} X & =\frac{1}{a}\left(a X^{i}\right)_{, i}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{|g|}}\left(\sqrt{|g|} X^{i}\right)_{, i} \quad \text { for the "standard" } \eta \tag{15.22}
\end{align*}
$$

## 16 Affine connections: Covariant derivative of a vector field

Definition: An affine (linear) connection or covariant differentiation on a manifold $\mathcal{M}$ is a mapping $\nabla$ which assigns to every pair $X, Y$ of $\mathcal{C}^{\infty}$ vector fields on $\mathcal{M}$ another $\mathcal{C}^{\infty}$ vector field $\nabla_{X} Y$ with the following properties:
(i) $\nabla_{X} Y$ is bilinear in $X$ and $Y$,
(ii) if $f \in \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{M})$, then

$$
\begin{align*}
& \nabla_{f X} Y=f \nabla_{X} Y \\
& \nabla_{X}(f Y)=f \nabla_{X} Y+X(f) Y \tag{16.1}
\end{align*}
$$

 $p$.

Proof: Let $\mathcal{U}$ be a coordinate neighbourhood of $p$. On $\mathcal{U}$ we have the representation $X=\xi^{i} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}$, $\xi^{i} \in \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U})$ with $\xi^{i}(p)=0$. Then $\left(\nabla_{X} Y\right)_{p}=\nabla_{\xi^{i} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}} Y=\underbrace{\xi^{i}(p)}_{=0}\left[\nabla_{\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}} Y\right]_{p}=0$.
Since $\nabla_{X} Y$ produces again a vector field, the result of the covariant differentiation can only be a linear combination of again the basis in the current chart. This leads us to the following statement:

Definition: One sets, relative to a chart $\left(X^{1}, \ldots, X^{n}\right)$ for $\mathcal{U} \subset \mathcal{M}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla_{\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j}}\right)=\Gamma_{i j}^{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{k}} \tag{16.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $n^{3}$ functions $\Gamma_{i j}^{k} \in \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U})$ are called Christoffel symbols (or connection coefficients) of the connection $\nabla$ in a given chart ${ }^{10}$

The Christoffel symbols are not tensors:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla_{\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{x}^{a}}}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{x}^{b}}\right)=\bar{\Gamma}_{a b}^{c} \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{x}^{c}}=\bar{\Gamma}_{a b}^{c} \frac{\partial x^{k}}{\partial \bar{x}^{c}} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{k}} . \tag{16.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

If we use 16.1):

$$
\begin{aligned}
\nabla_{\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{x}^{a}}}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{x}^{b}}\right) & =\nabla_{\left(\frac{\partial x^{i}}{\partial \bar{x}^{a}} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}\right)}\left(\frac{\partial x^{j}}{\partial \bar{x}^{b}} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j}}\right)=\frac{\partial x^{i}}{\partial \bar{x}^{a}}\left[\frac{\partial x^{j}}{\partial \bar{x}^{b}} \Gamma_{i j}^{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{k}}+\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{i}}\left(\frac{\partial x^{j}}{\partial \bar{x}^{b}}\right) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j}}\right] \\
& =\frac{\partial x^{i}}{\partial \bar{x}^{a}} \frac{\partial x^{j}}{\partial \bar{x}^{b}} \Gamma_{i j}^{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{k}}+\frac{\partial^{2} x^{j}}{\partial \bar{x}^{a} \partial \bar{x}^{b}} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{j}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Comparison with 16.3

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial x^{k}}{\partial \bar{x}^{c}} \bar{\Gamma}_{a b}^{c} & =\frac{\partial x^{i}}{\partial \bar{x}^{a}} \frac{\partial x^{j}}{\partial \bar{x}^{b}} \Gamma_{i j}^{k}+\frac{\partial^{2} x^{k}}{\partial \bar{x}^{a} \partial \bar{x}^{b}} \\
\Rightarrow \bar{\Gamma}_{a b}^{c} & =\frac{\partial x^{i}}{\partial \bar{x}^{a}} \frac{\partial x^{j}}{\partial \bar{x}^{b}} \frac{\partial \bar{x}^{c}}{\partial x^{k}} \Gamma_{i j}^{k}+\frac{\partial \bar{x}^{c}}{\partial x^{k}} \frac{\partial^{2} x^{k}}{\partial \bar{x}^{a} \partial \bar{x}^{b}} \tag{16.4}
\end{align*}
$$

The second term is not compatible with being a tensor.
If for every chart there exist $n^{3}$ functions $\Gamma_{i j}^{k}$ which transform according to 16.4 under a change of coordinates, then one can show that there exists a unique affine connection $\nabla$ on $\mathcal{M}$ which satisfies (16.3).

Definition: for every vector field $X$ we can introduce the tensor $\nabla X \in T_{1}^{1}(\mathcal{M})$ defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla X(Y, \omega) \equiv\left\langle\omega, \nabla_{Y} X\right\rangle \tag{16.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\omega$ is a one-form. $\nabla X$ is called the covariant derivative of $X$.

In a chart $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$, let $X=\xi^{i} \partial_{i}$ and $\nabla X=\xi_{; j}^{i} \mathrm{~d} x^{j} \otimes \partial_{i}\left(<d x^{i}, \partial_{i}>=\delta_{k}^{i}\right)$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\xi_{; j}^{i}=\nabla X\left(\partial_{j}, \mathrm{~d} x^{i}\right)=\left\langle\mathrm{d} x^{i}, \nabla_{\partial_{j}} X\right\rangle=\left\langle\mathrm{d} x^{i}, \xi^{k}, j \partial_{k}+\xi^{k} \Gamma_{j k}^{\delta} \partial_{\delta}\right\rangle=\xi_{, j}^{i}+\Gamma_{j k}^{i} \xi^{k} \tag{16.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^7]
### 16.1 Parallel transport along a curve

Definition: let $\gamma: I \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ be a curve in $\mathcal{M}$ with velocity field $\dot{\gamma}(t)$, and let $X$ be a vector field on some open neighbourhood of $\gamma(I)$. $X$ is said to be autoparallel along $\gamma$ if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} X=0 \tag{16.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The vector $\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} X$ is sometimes denoted as $\frac{D X}{\mathrm{~d} t}$ or $\frac{\nabla X}{\mathrm{~d} t}$ (covariant derivative along $\gamma$ ). In terms of coordinates, we have $X=\xi^{i} \partial_{i}, \dot{\gamma}=\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t} \partial_{i}($ see 12.3$)$. With 16.1) and 16.2 we get

$$
\begin{align*}
\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} X & =\nabla_{\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t} \partial_{i}}\left(\xi^{k} \partial_{k}\right) \\
& =\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t} \nabla_{\partial_{i}}\left(\xi^{k} \partial_{k}\right) \\
& =\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left[\xi^{k} \Gamma_{i k}^{j} \partial_{j}+\partial_{i} \xi^{k} \partial_{k}\right] \\
& =\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left[\xi^{j} \Gamma_{i j}^{k} \partial_{k}+\partial_{i} \xi^{k} \partial_{k}\right] \\
& =\left[\frac{\mathrm{d} \xi^{k}}{\mathrm{~d} t}+\Gamma_{i j}^{k} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t} \xi^{j}\right] \partial_{k} \tag{16.8}
\end{align*}
$$

where we used $\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t} \frac{\partial \xi^{k}}{\partial x^{i}}=\frac{\mathrm{d} \xi^{k}}{\mathrm{~d} t}$. This shows that $\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} X$ only depends on the values of $X$ along $\gamma$. In terms of coordinates we get for 16.7

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} \xi^{k}}{\mathrm{~d} t}+\Gamma_{i j}^{k} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t} \xi^{j}=0 \tag{16.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

For a curve $\gamma$ and any two point $\gamma(s)$ and $\gamma(t)$ consider the mapping

$$
\tau_{t, s}: T_{\gamma(s)}(\mathcal{M}) \rightarrow T_{\gamma(t)}(\mathcal{M})
$$

which transforms a vector $v(s)$ at $\gamma(s)$ into the parallel transported vector $v(t)$ at $\gamma(t)$. The mapping $\tau_{t, s}$ is the parallel transport along $\gamma$ from $\gamma(s)$ to $\gamma(t)$. We have $\tau_{s, s}=\mathbb{1}$ and $\tau_{r, s} \circ \tau_{s, t}=\tau_{r, t}$.

We can now give a geometrical interpretation of the covariant derivative that will be generalized to tensors. Let $X$ be a vector field along $\gamma$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} X(\gamma(t))=\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} s}\right|_{s=t} \tau_{t, s} X(\gamma(s)) \tag{16.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof: Let's work in a given chart. By construction, $v(t)=\tau_{t, s} v(s)$ with $v(s) \in T_{\gamma(s)}(\mathcal{M})$ and due to 16.8) it satisifies: $\dot{v}^{i}+\Gamma_{k j}^{i} \dot{x}^{k} v^{j}=0$. If we write $\left(\tau_{t, s} v(s)\right)^{i}=\left(\tau_{t, s}\right)^{i}{ }_{j} v^{j}(s)=v^{i}(t)$ (with $\tau_{t, s}=\left(\tau_{s, t}\right)^{-1}$


Figure 9: Illustration of parallel transport.
and $\tau_{s, s}=\mathbb{1}$ ), we get

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{v}^{i}(s) & =\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\right|_{t=s} v^{i}(t) \\
& =\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\right|_{t=s}\left[\left(\tau_{t, s}\right)^{i}{ }_{j} v^{j}(s)\right] \\
& =\left(\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\right|_{t=s}\left(\tau_{t, s}\right)^{i}{ }_{j}\right) v^{j}(s) \\
& =-\Gamma_{k j}^{i} \dot{x}^{k} v^{j}(s) . \\
\left.\Rightarrow \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\right|_{t=s}\left(\tau_{t, s}\right)^{i}{ }_{j} & =-\Gamma_{k j}^{i} \dot{x}^{k} \tag{16.11}
\end{align*}
$$

Since $\tau_{t, s}=\left(\tau_{s, t}\right)^{-1},\left.\frac{\mathrm{~d}}{\mathrm{~d} s}\right|_{s=t}\left(\tau_{t, s}\right)^{i}{ }_{j}=-\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d} t}\right|_{t=s}\left(\tau_{t, s}\right)^{i}{ }_{j}=\Gamma_{k j}^{i} \dot{x}^{k}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} s}\right|_{s=t}\left[\tau_{t, s} X(\gamma(s))\right]^{i} & =\left(\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} s}\right|_{s=t} \tau_{t, s}\right)_{j}^{i} X^{j}+\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} s}\right|_{s=t} X^{i}(\gamma(s)) \\
& =\Gamma_{k j}^{i} \dot{x}^{k} X^{j}+\left.X^{i}{ }_{, j} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{j}(\gamma(s))}{\mathrm{d} s}\right|_{s=t}
\end{aligned}
$$

which is again $16.8\left(X=\xi^{i} \partial_{i}\right.$ and the second term gives $\left.\frac{\mathrm{d} \xi^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\right)$.

Definition: If $\nabla_{X} Y=0$, then $Y$ is said to be parallel transported with respect to $X$.
$\underline{\text { Geometrical interpretation of parallel transport: Consider the differential } \mathrm{d} A^{i}=A^{i}{ }_{, j} \mathrm{~d} x^{j}=A^{i}(x+}$ $\mathrm{d} x)-A^{i}(x)$. In order that the difference of two vectors be a vector, we have to consider them at the same position. The transport has to be chosen such that for cartesian coordinates there is no change in transporting it. The covariant derivative exactly achieves this.

Definition: Let $X$ be a vector field such that $\nabla_{X} X=0$. Then the integral curves of $X$ are called geodesics.

In local coordinates $x^{i}$ the curve is given by (using 12.3) and 13.6) the requirement $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d} t} x^{i}(t)=$ $X^{i}(x(t))$. Inserting this into 16.8 and using $\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} x^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t^{2}}=\frac{\mathrm{d} X^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} t}$, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ddot{x}^{k}+\Gamma_{i j}^{k} \dot{x}^{i} \dot{x}^{j}=0 \tag{16.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

For a vector parallel transported along a geodesic, its length and angle with the geodesic does not change.

### 16.2 Round trips by parallel transport

Consider 16.8 and denote $\xi^{i}=v^{i}$, thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{v}^{i}=-\Gamma_{k j}^{i} \dot{x}^{k} v^{j} \tag{16.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $\gamma:[0,1] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ be a closed path, wih $\gamma(0)=p=\gamma(1)$. Displace a vector $v_{0} \in T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$ parallel along $\gamma$ and obtain the field $v(t)=\tau_{t, 0} v_{0} \in T_{\gamma(t)}(\mathcal{M})$. We assume that the closed path is sufficiently small (such that we can work in the image of some chart), thus we can expand $\Gamma_{k j}^{i}(x)$ around the point $x(0)=x_{0}$ on the curve:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{k j}^{i}(x) \simeq \Gamma_{k j}^{i}\left(x_{0}\right)+\left.\left(x^{\rho}-x_{0}^{\rho}\right) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{\rho}} \Gamma_{k j}^{i}(x)\right|_{x=x_{0}}+\cdots \tag{16.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus 16.13 is to first order in $\left(x^{k}-x_{0}^{k}\right)$ :

$$
\int_{0}^{t} \dot{v}^{i} \mathrm{~d} t=v^{i}(t)-v_{0}^{i}=-\int_{0}^{t} \Gamma_{k j}^{i} \underbrace{v^{j}}_{\simeq v_{0}^{j}} \dot{x}^{k} \mathrm{~d} t \approx-\Gamma_{k j}^{i}\left(x_{0}\right) v_{0}^{j} \underbrace{\int_{0}^{t} \dot{x}^{k} \mathrm{~d} t}_{x^{k}(t)-x_{0}^{k}}
$$

taking only the first term in the expansion of $\Gamma$. And hence,

$$
\begin{equation*}
v^{i}(t)=v_{0}^{i}-\Gamma_{k j}^{i}\left(x_{0}\right)\left(x^{k}(t)-x_{0}^{k}\right) v_{0}^{j}+\cdots \tag{16.15}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 10: Illustration of the path dependence of parallel transport on a curved space: vector 1 at N can be parallel transported along the geodesic N-S to C, giving rise to vector 2. Alternatively, it can be first transported along the geodesic N-S to E (vector 3) and then along E-W to C to give the vector 4. Clearly these two are different. The angle $\alpha$ between them reflects the curvature of the two-sphere.

By plugging 16.14 and 16.15 into 16.13 , we obtain an equation valid to second order:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \int_{0}^{1} \dot{v}^{i} \mathrm{~d} t=-\int_{0}^{1} \Gamma_{k j}^{i} \dot{x}^{k} v^{j} d t  \tag{16.16}\\
& v^{i}(1)-v_{0}^{i} \simeq-\int_{0}^{1}\left(\Gamma_{k j}^{i}\left(x_{0}\right)+\left(x^{\rho}-x_{0}^{\rho}\right) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^{\rho}} \Gamma_{k j}^{i}\left(x_{0}\right)+\cdots\right) \times \\
& \\
& \quad\left(v_{0}^{j}-\Gamma_{\tilde{k} \tilde{j}}^{j}\left(x_{0}\right)\left(x^{\tilde{k}}(t)-x_{0}^{\tilde{k}}\right) v_{0}^{\tilde{j}}+\cdots\right) \dot{x}^{k} \mathrm{~d} t \\
& 53
\end{align*}
$$

Multiplying out and discarding terms of third order or higher in $x^{k}-x_{0}^{k}$, we get:

$$
v^{i}(1) \simeq v_{0}^{i}-\Gamma_{k j}^{i}\left(x_{0}\right) v_{0}^{j} \underbrace{\int_{0}^{1} \dot{x}^{k} \mathrm{~d} t}_{\substack{x^{k}(1)-x^{k}(0) \\=0}}-\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{\rho}} \Gamma_{k j}^{i}\left(x_{0}\right)-\Gamma_{k \tilde{j}}^{i}\left(x_{0}\right) \Gamma_{\rho j}^{\tilde{j}}\left(x_{0}\right)\right] v_{0}^{j} \int_{0}^{1}\left(x^{\rho}-x_{0}^{\rho}\right) \dot{x}^{k} \mathrm{~d} t .
$$

Since we are considering a closed path $\left(\int_{0}^{1} \dot{x} d t=x^{k}(1)-x^{k}(0)=0\right)$,

$$
\Delta v^{i}=v^{i}(1)-v^{i}(0)=-\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{\rho}} \Gamma_{k j}^{i}\left(x_{0}\right)-\Gamma_{k l}^{i}\left(x_{0}\right) \Gamma_{\rho j}^{l}\left(x_{0}\right)\right] v_{0}^{j} \int_{0}^{1} x^{\rho} \dot{x}^{k} \mathrm{~d} t
$$

with

$$
\oint_{0}^{1} x^{\rho} \dot{x}^{k} \mathrm{~d} t=\underbrace{\oint_{0}^{1} \frac{\mathrm{~d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left(x^{\rho} x^{k}\right) \mathrm{d} t}_{=0}-\oint_{0}^{1} \dot{x}^{\rho} x^{k} \mathrm{~d} t=-\oint_{0}^{1} \dot{x}^{\rho} x^{k} \mathrm{~d} t
$$

antisymmetric in $(\rho, k)$. Then

$$
\begin{align*}
& \Delta v^{i}=-\frac{1}{2} \underbrace{\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{\rho}} \Gamma_{k j}^{i}-\Gamma_{k l}^{i} \Gamma_{\rho j}^{l}-\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{k}} \Gamma_{\rho j}^{i}+\Gamma_{\rho l}^{i} \Gamma_{k j}^{l}\right]\left(x_{0}\right)}_{-R_{j k \rho}^{i}} v_{0}^{j} \int_{0}^{1} x^{\rho} \dot{x}^{k} \mathrm{~d} t \\
& \Delta v^{i}=\frac{1}{2} R_{j k \rho}^{i}\left(x_{0}\right) v_{0}^{j} \int_{0}^{1} x^{\rho} \dot{x}^{k} \mathrm{~d} t . \tag{16.17}
\end{align*}
$$

We shall see that $R_{j k \rho}^{i}$ is the curvature tensor.

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{j k \rho}^{i}=\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{k}} \Gamma_{\rho j}^{i}-\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{\rho}} \Gamma_{k j}^{i}+\Gamma_{\rho j}^{l} \Gamma_{k l}^{i}-\Gamma_{k j}^{l} \Gamma_{\rho l}^{i} \tag{16.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus an arbitrary vector $v^{i}$ will not change when parallel transported around an arbitrary small closed curve at $x_{0}$ if and only if $R_{j k \rho}^{i}$ vanishes at $x_{0}$.

### 16.3 Covariant derivatives of tensor fields

The parallel transport is extended to tensors by means of the requirements:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tau_{s, t}(T \otimes S) & =\left(\tau_{s, t} T\right) \otimes\left(\tau_{s, t} S\right) \\
\tau_{s, t} \operatorname{tr}(T) & =\operatorname{tr}\left(\tau_{s, t} T\right) \\
\tau_{s, t} c & =c \quad(c \in \mathbb{R})
\end{aligned}
$$

For e.g. a covariant vector $\omega,\left\langle\tau_{s, t} \omega, \tau_{s, t} X\right\rangle_{\gamma(s)}=\langle\omega, X\rangle_{\gamma(t)}$ and for a tensor of type $\binom{1}{1}: \tau_{s, t} T\left(\tau_{s, t} \omega, \tau_{s, t} X\right)=$ $T(\omega, X)$. In components:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\tau_{s, t} T\right)^{i}{ }_{k}=T^{\alpha}{ }_{\beta}\left(\tau_{s, t}\right)^{i}{ }_{\alpha}\left(\tau_{s, t}\right)_{k}{ }^{\beta} \tag{16.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\left(\tau_{i}{ }^{k}\right.$ is inverse transpose of $\left.\tau^{i}{ }_{k}\right)$. The covariant derivative $\nabla_{X}(X$ vector field, $T$ tensor field $)$ associated to $\tau$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\nabla_{X} T\right)_{p}=\left.\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t} \tau_{0, t} T_{\gamma(t)}\right|_{t=0} \tag{16.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\gamma(t)$ any curve with $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=X_{p}$ (generalization of 16.10p).

Properties of the covariant derivative:
(a) $\nabla_{X}$ is a linear map from tensor fields to tensor fields of the same type $\binom{r}{r}$,
(b) $\nabla_{X} f=X f$,
(c) $\nabla_{X}(\operatorname{tr} T)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\nabla_{X} T\right)$,
(d) $\nabla_{X}(T \otimes S)=\left(\nabla_{X} T\right) \otimes S+T \otimes\left(\nabla_{X} S\right)$.

This follows from the properties of $\tau_{s, t}$. For a 1-form $\omega$ we have:

$$
\begin{align*}
\left(\nabla_{X} \omega\right)(Y) & =\operatorname{tr}\left(\nabla_{X} \omega \otimes Y\right) \\
& =\operatorname{tr}\left(\nabla_{X}(\omega \otimes Y)\right)-\operatorname{tr}\left(\omega \otimes \nabla_{X} Y\right) \\
& =\nabla_{X} \operatorname{tr}(\omega \otimes Y)-\omega\left(\nabla_{X} Y\right) \\
& =X \omega(Y)-\omega\left(\nabla_{X} Y\right) \tag{16.21}
\end{align*}
$$

General differentiation rule for a tensor field of type $\binom{1}{1}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\nabla_{X} T\right)(\omega, Y)=X T(\omega, Y)-T\left(\nabla_{X} \omega, Y\right)-T\left(\omega, \nabla_{X} Y\right) \tag{16.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Due to (a)-(d), the operation $\nabla_{X}$ is completely determined by its action on vector fields $Y$, which are the affine connections (see 16.1 and 16.2 ).

### 16.4 Local coordinate expressions for covariant derivative

Let $T \in T_{p}^{q}(\mathcal{U})$ be a tensor of $\operatorname{rank}(p, q)$ with local coordinates $\left(x^{1}, \ldots, x^{n}\right)$ valid in a region $\mathcal{U}$. We have $T^{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}}{ }_{j_{1} \ldots j_{q}} \partial_{i_{1}} \otimes \ldots \otimes \partial_{i_{p}} \otimes \mathrm{~d} x^{j_{1}} \otimes \ldots \otimes \mathrm{~d} x^{j_{q}}$ and $X=X^{k} \partial_{k}$. Let us use

$$
\begin{equation*}
X T^{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}}{ }_{j_{1} \ldots j_{q}}=X^{k} T^{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}}{ }_{j_{1} \ldots j_{q}, k} \tag{16.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

and write 16.2 :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla_{X}\left(\partial_{i}\right)=X^{k} \nabla_{\partial_{k}} \partial_{i}=X^{k} \Gamma_{k i}^{l} \partial_{l} \tag{16.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover,

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left(\nabla_{X} \mathrm{~d} x^{j}\right)\left(\partial_{i}\right) \stackrel{\sqrt{16.21}}{\stackrel{1}{2}} \underbrace{\langle\underbrace{\left\langle\mathrm{~d} x^{j}, \partial_{i}\right\rangle}_{\delta^{j}}}_{0}-\left\langle\mathrm{d} x^{j}, \nabla_{X} \partial_{i}\right\rangle \\
& =-X^{k} \Gamma_{k i}^{j} \\
& \text { or } \quad \nabla_{X} \mathrm{~d} x^{j} \quad=-X^{k} \Gamma_{k i}^{j} \mathrm{~d} x^{i} . \tag{16.25}
\end{align*}
$$

Using (16.23, 16.24 and 16.25 for $\omega^{j}=\mathrm{d} x^{j}, Y_{i}=\partial_{i}$ we obtain the following expression for $\nabla_{X} T$ :

$$
\begin{align*}
T^{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}}{ }_{j_{1} \ldots j_{q} ; k} & =T^{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}}{ }_{j_{1} \ldots j_{q}, k}+\Gamma_{k l}^{i_{1}} T^{l i_{2} \ldots i_{p}}{ }_{j_{1} \ldots j_{q}}+\ldots+\Gamma_{k l}^{i_{p}} T^{i_{1} \ldots i_{p-1} l}{ }_{j_{1} \ldots j_{q}} \\
& -\Gamma_{k j_{1}}^{l} T^{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}}{ }_{l j_{2} \ldots j_{q}}-\ldots-\Gamma_{k j_{q}}^{l} T^{i_{1} \ldots i_{p}}{ }_{j_{1} \ldots j_{q-1} l} . \tag{16.26}
\end{align*}
$$

Examples:

- Contravariant and covariant vector fields:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \xi_{; k}^{i}=\xi_{, k}^{i}+\Gamma_{k l}^{i} \xi^{l}, \\
& \eta_{i ; k}=\eta_{i, k}-\Gamma_{k i}^{l} \eta_{l}
\end{aligned}
$$

- Kronecker tensor:

$$
\delta_{j ; k}^{i}=0,
$$

- Tensor $\binom{1}{1}$ :

$$
T_{k ; r}^{i}=T_{k, r}^{i}+\Gamma_{r l}^{i} T^{l}{ }_{k}-\Gamma_{r k}^{l} T^{i}{ }_{l} .
$$

The covariant derivative of a tensor is again a tensor. Consider the covariant derivative of the metric $g_{\mu \nu}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
g_{\mu \nu ; \lambda}=\frac{\partial g_{\mu \nu}}{\partial x^{\lambda}}-\Gamma_{\lambda \mu}^{\rho} g_{\rho \nu}-\Gamma_{\lambda \nu}^{\rho} g_{\rho \mu} \tag{16.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

Inserting into this the expressions of $\Gamma_{\lambda \mu}^{\rho}$ given by 9.11 leads us to

$$
\begin{equation*}
g_{\mu \nu ; \lambda}=0 \tag{16.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is not surprising since $g_{\mu \nu ; \lambda}$ vanishes in locally inertial coordinates and being a tensor it is then zero in all systems.

Covariance principle: Write the appropriate special relativistic equations that hold in the absence of gravitation, replace $\eta_{\alpha \beta}$ by $g_{\alpha \beta}$, and replace all derivatives with covariant derivatives $(, \rightarrow ;)$. The resulting equations will be generally covariant and true in the presence of gravitational fields.

## 17 Curvature and torsion of an affine connection, Bianchi identities

Let an affine connection be given on $\mathcal{M}$, let $X, Y, Z$ be vector fields.

Definition:

$$
\begin{align*}
& T(X, Y)=\nabla_{X} Y-\nabla_{Y} X-[X, Y]  \tag{17.1}\\
& R(X, Y)=\nabla_{X} \nabla_{Y}-\nabla_{Y} \nabla_{X}-\nabla_{[X, Y]} \tag{17.2}
\end{align*}
$$

$T(X, Y)$ is antisymmetric and $f$-linear in $X, Y$ and then defines a tensor of type $\binom{1}{2}$ through: $(\omega, X, Y) \rightarrow\langle\omega, T(X, Y)\rangle$ is thus a $\binom{1}{2}$ tensor field called the torsion tensor.
$f$-linearity:

$$
T(f X, g Y)=f g T(X, Y) \quad f, g, \in \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{M})
$$

In local coordinates, the components of the torsion tensor are given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
T_{i j}^{k} & =\left\langle\mathrm{d} x^{k}, T\left(\partial_{i}, \partial_{j}\right)\right\rangle=\langle\mathrm{d} x^{k}, \underbrace{\nabla_{\partial_{i}} \partial_{j}}_{=\Gamma_{i j}^{l} \partial_{l}}-\nabla_{\partial_{j}} \partial_{i}-\underbrace{\left[\partial_{i}, \partial_{j}\right]}_{=0}\rangle \\
& =\Gamma_{i j}^{k}-\Gamma_{j i}^{k} \tag{17.3}
\end{align*}
$$

(using that $\left\langle\mathrm{d} x^{k}, \partial_{l}\right\rangle=\delta^{k}{ }_{l}$ ). In particular, we have $T^{k}{ }_{i j}=0 \Leftrightarrow \Gamma_{i j}^{k}=\Gamma_{j i}^{k}$.
$R(X, Y)=-R(Y, X)$ is antisymmetric in $X, Y$. The vector field $R(X, Y) Z$ is $f$-linear in $X, Y, Z$ : $(R(f X, g Y) h Z=f g h R(X, Y) Z ; f, g, h \in \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{M})) . R$ determines a tensor of type $\binom{1}{3}$ : the Riemann tensor or curvature tensor.

$$
(\omega, Z, X, Y) \rightarrow\langle\omega, R(X, Y) Z\rangle \equiv R_{j k l}^{i} \omega_{i} Z^{j} X^{k} Y^{l}
$$

In components with respect to local coordinates:

$$
\begin{align*}
R_{j k l}^{i} & =\left\langle\mathrm{d} x^{i}, R\left(\partial_{k}, \partial_{l}\right) \partial_{j}\right\rangle=\left\langle\mathrm{d} x^{i},\left(\nabla_{\partial_{k}} \nabla_{\partial_{l}}-\nabla_{\partial_{l}} \nabla_{\partial_{k}}\right) \partial_{j} \sqrt{12}\right. \\
& =\left\langle\mathrm{d} x^{i}, \nabla_{\partial_{k}}\left(\Gamma_{l j}^{s} \partial_{s}\right)-\nabla_{\partial_{l}}\left(\Gamma_{k j}^{s} \partial_{s}\right)\right\rangle \\
& =\Gamma_{l j, k}^{i}-\Gamma_{k j, l}^{i}+\Gamma_{l j}^{s} \Gamma_{k s}^{i}-\Gamma_{k j}^{s} \Gamma_{l s}^{i} . \tag{17.4}
\end{align*}
$$

[^8]Eq. 17.4 is exactly the the same as defined in 16.18. It is antisymmetric in the last two indices: $R^{i}{ }_{j k l}=-R^{i}{ }_{j l k}$.

Definition: The Ricci tensor is the following contraction of the curvature tensor:

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{j l} \equiv R_{j i l}^{i}=\Gamma_{l j, i}^{i}-\Gamma_{i j, l}^{i}+\Gamma_{l j}^{s} \Gamma_{i s}^{i}-\Gamma_{i j}^{s} \Gamma_{l s}^{i} \tag{17.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

The scalar curvature is the trace of the Ricci tensor:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R} \equiv g^{l j} R_{j l}=R_{l}^{l} \tag{17.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Example: For a pseudo-Riemannian manifold the connection coefficients are given by 9.11). Consider a two-sphere (which is a pseudo Riemannian manifold) with the metric $\mathrm{d} s^{2}=a^{2}\left(\mathrm{~d} \theta^{2}+\sin ^{2} \theta \mathrm{~d} \phi^{2}\right)$, then:

$$
g_{\theta \phi}=a^{2}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & \sin ^{2} \theta
\end{array}\right), \quad g^{\theta \phi}=\frac{1}{a^{2}}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & \frac{1}{\sin ^{2} \theta}
\end{array}\right)
$$

The non-zero $\Gamma$ are:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Gamma_{\phi \phi}^{\theta}=-\sin \theta \cos \theta \\
& \Gamma_{\theta \phi}^{\phi}=\Gamma_{\phi \theta}^{\phi}=\cot \theta
\end{aligned}
$$

The Riemann tensor is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{\phi \theta \phi}^{\theta} & =\partial_{\theta} \Gamma_{\phi \phi}^{\theta}-\partial_{\phi} \Gamma_{\theta \phi}^{\theta}+\Gamma_{\theta \lambda}^{\theta} \Gamma_{\phi \theta}^{\lambda}-\Gamma_{\phi \lambda}^{\theta} \Gamma_{\theta \phi}^{\lambda} \\
& =\left(\sin ^{2} \theta-\cos ^{2} \theta\right)-0+0-(-\sin \theta \cos \theta) \cot \theta \\
& =\sin ^{2} \theta
\end{aligned}
$$

The Ricci tensor has the following components:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R_{\phi \phi}=R_{\phi \theta \phi}^{\theta}+\underbrace{R_{\phi \phi \phi}^{\phi}}_{=0}=\sin ^{2} \theta \\
& R_{\theta \theta}=1 \\
& R_{\theta \phi}=R_{\phi \theta}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

The Ricci scalar is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{R} & =\underbrace{g^{\theta \theta}}_{\frac{1}{a^{2}}} \underbrace{R_{\theta \theta}}_{1}+\underbrace{g^{\phi \phi}}_{\frac{1}{a^{2} \sin ^{2} \theta}} \underbrace{\sin ^{2} \theta} \\
& =\frac{1}{a^{2}}+\frac{1}{a^{2} \sin ^{2} \theta} \sin ^{2} \theta \\
& =\frac{2}{a^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

The Ricci scalar is constant over this two-sphere and positive, thus the sphere is "positively curved". $13 \sqrt{14} 15$

### 17.1 Bianchi identities for the special case of zero torsion

$X, Y$ and $Z$ are vector fields, then

$$
\begin{align*}
R(X, Y) Z+\text { cyclic }=0 & \text { (1st Bianchi identity) }  \tag{17.7}\\
\left(\nabla_{X} R\right)(Y, Z)+\text { cyclic }=0 & \text { (2nd Bianchi identity) }
\end{align*}
$$

$\underline{\text { Proof of the 1st identity: Torsion }}=0 \Rightarrow \nabla_{X} Y-\nabla_{Y} X=[X, Y]$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\nabla_{X} \nabla_{Y}-\right. & \left.\nabla_{Y} \nabla_{X}\right) Z \\
& +\left(\nabla_{Z} \nabla_{X}-\nabla_{X} \nabla_{Z}\right) Y \\
& +\left(\nabla_{Y} \nabla_{Z}-\nabla_{Z} \nabla_{Y}\right) X-\nabla_{[X, Y]} Z-\nabla_{[Z, X]} Y-\nabla_{[Y, Z]} X \\
= & \nabla_{X}\left(\nabla_{Y} Z-\nabla_{Z} Y\right)-\nabla_{[Y, Z]} X+\text { cyclic } \\
= & {[X,[Y, Z]]+\text { cyclic } } \\
= & 0 \quad \text { due to the Jacobi identity } 13.2 .
\end{aligned}
$$

(See textbooks for proof of the 2nd Bianchi identity.)

[^9]
## 18 Riemannian connections

Metric: Let $\mathcal{M}$ be equipped with a pseudo-Riemannian metric: a symmetric, non-degenerate tensor field: $g(X, Y)=\langle X, Y\rangle$ of type $\binom{0}{2}$.

- Non-degenerate means that, for any point $p \in \mathcal{M}, X, Y \in T_{p}$, one has $g_{p}(X, Y)=0 \forall Y \in T_{p} \Rightarrow$ $X=0$.
- In components, $\langle X, Y\rangle=g_{i k} X^{i} Y^{k}, g_{i k}=g_{k i}$ (symmetric) and $\operatorname{det} g_{i k} \neq 0$.
- With the metric we can lower and raise indices:

$$
\tilde{X}_{i}=g_{i k} X^{k}, \quad \tilde{\omega}^{i}=g^{i k} \omega_{k}
$$

where $g^{i k}$ denotes the inverse of $g_{i k}$. It also works for tensor fields of different types: $T^{i}{ }_{k}=$ $T_{l k} g^{i l}=T^{i l} g_{l k}$.

- Given a basis $\left(e_{1}, \ldots, e_{n}\right)$ of $T_{p}$, the covectors of the dual basis $\left(e^{1}, \ldots, e^{n}\right)$ become themselves vectors; indeed $e_{i}=g_{i j} e^{j}$.

Riemann connection: The metric tensor $g$ at a point $p$ in $\mathcal{M}$ is a symmetric $\binom{0}{2}$ tensor. It assigns a magnitude $\sqrt{|g(X, X)|}$ to each vector $X$ on $T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$, denoted by $\mathrm{d}(X)$ and defines the angle between any two vectors $X, Y(\neq 0)$ on $T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$ via

$$
\begin{equation*}
a(X, Y)=\arccos \left(\frac{g(X, Y)}{\mathrm{d}(X) \mathrm{d}(Y)}\right) \tag{18.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $a(X, Y)=\frac{\pi}{2}$ then $X$ and $Y$ are orthogonal. Further observations:

- The length of a curve with tangent vector $X$ between $t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$ is $L\left(t_{1}, t_{2}\right)=\int_{t_{1}}^{t_{2}} \mathrm{~d}(X) \mathrm{d} t$.
- If $\left(e_{a}\right)$ is a basis of $T_{p}(\mathcal{M})$, the components of $g$ with respect to this basis are $g_{a b}=g\left(e_{a}, e_{b}\right)$.
- Like in special relativity we classify vectors at a point as timelike $(g(X, X)>0)$, null $(g(X, X)=$ $0)$ and space like $(g(X, X)<0)$.

Definition: let $(\mathcal{M}, g)$ be a pseudo-Riemannian manifold. An affine connection is a metric connection if parallel transport along any smooth curve $\gamma$ on $\mathcal{M}$ preserve the inner product: for autoparallel fields $X(t), Y(t)$ (see 16.7) ), $g_{\gamma(t)}(X(t), Y(t))$ is independent of $t$ along $\gamma$.

Theorem: an affine connection $\nabla$ is metric if and only if (no proof)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla g=0 \tag{18.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Eq. 18.2 is equivalent for $(g(Y, Z))$ to

$$
\nabla_{X} g=0=X g(Y, Z)-g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)-g\left(Y, \nabla_{X} Z\right)
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
X g(Y, Z)=g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)+g\left(Y, \nabla_{X} Z\right) \tag{18.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Theorem: For every pseudo-Riemannian manifold $(\mathcal{M}, g)$, there exists a unique affine connection such that
(a) $\nabla$ has vanishing torsion ( $\nabla$ is symmetric),
(b) $\nabla$ is metric.

Proof: $T=0$ (vanishing torsion) means $\nabla_{X} Y=\nabla_{Y} X+[X, Y]$. Inserting this into 18.3) (and the linearity of $g$ ) gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
X g(Y, Z)=g\left(\nabla_{Y} X, Z\right)+g([X, Y], Z)+g\left(Y, \nabla_{X} Z\right) \tag{18.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

By cyclic permutations one obtains as well

$$
\begin{align*}
& Y g(Z, X)=g\left(\nabla_{Z} Y, X\right)+g([Y, Z], X)+g\left(Z, \nabla_{Y} X\right)  \tag{18.5}\\
& Z g(X, Y)=g\left(\nabla_{X} Z, Y\right)+g([Z, X], Y)+g\left(X, \nabla_{Z} Y\right) \tag{18.6}
\end{align*}
$$

Taking the linear combination 18.5 + 18.6 - 18.4 , we get (Koszul formula):

$$
\begin{align*}
2 g\left(\nabla_{Z} Y, X\right)= & -X g(Y, Z)+Y g(Z, X)+Z g(X, Y) \\
& -g([Z, X], Y)-g([Y, Z], X)+g([X, Y], Z) . \tag{18.7}
\end{align*}
$$

The right hand side is independent of $\nabla$. Since $g$ is non-degenerate, the uniqueness of $\nabla$ follows from (18.7).

Definition: the unique connection on $(\mathcal{M}, g)$ from the above theorem is called the Riemannian or Levi-Civita connection.

We determine the Christoffel symbols for the Riemannian connection in a given chart $\left(\mathcal{U}, x^{1}, \ldots, x^{n}\right)$. For this purpose we take $X=\partial_{k}, Y=\partial_{j}, Z=\partial_{i}$ in 18.7) and we use $\left[\partial_{i}, \partial_{j}\right]=0$ as well as $\left\langle\partial_{i}, \partial_{j}\right\rangle=g_{i j}$. The result is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle\nabla_{\partial_{i}} \partial_{j}, \partial_{k}\right\rangle & =\Gamma_{i j}^{l} \underbrace{\left\langle\partial_{l}, \partial_{k}\right\rangle}_{g_{l k}}, \\
2 \Gamma_{i j}^{l} g_{l k} & =-\partial_{k} \underbrace{\left\langle\partial_{i}, \partial_{j}\right\rangle}_{g_{i j}}+\partial_{j} \underbrace{\left\langle\partial_{i}, \partial_{k}\right\rangle}_{g_{i k}}+\partial_{i} \underbrace{\left\langle\partial_{k}, \partial_{j}\right\rangle}_{g_{k j}},
\end{aligned}
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
g_{l k} \Gamma_{i j}^{l}=\frac{1}{2}\left(g_{k j, i}+g_{i k, j}-g_{j i, k}\right) . \tag{18.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

$g^{i j}$ denoting the inverse matrix of $g_{i j}$, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{i j}^{l}=\frac{1}{2} g^{l k}\left(g_{k j, i}+g_{i k, j}-g_{j i, k}\right) \tag{18.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is exactly equation 9.11 .

Properties of the Riemannian connection:
(i) The inner product of any two vectors remains constant upon parallel transporting them along any curve $\gamma\left(g(X, Y)_{\gamma(t)}=g(X, Y)_{\gamma(0)}\right)$.
(ii) The covariant derivative commutes with raising or lowering indices, e.g. $T_{k ; l}^{i}=\left(g_{k m} T^{i m}\right)_{; l}$ $=g_{k m} T_{; l}^{i m}$, because $g_{k m ; l}=0$.

Riemann tensor: the curvature tensor of a Riemannian connection has the following additional symmetry properties (without proof):

$$
\begin{align*}
\langle R(X, Y) Z, U\rangle & =-\langle R(X, Y) U, Z\rangle  \tag{18.10}\\
\langle R(X, Y) Z, U\rangle & =\langle R(Z, U) X, Y\rangle \tag{18.11}
\end{align*}
$$

In coordinate expression the Riemann tensor satisfies the following symmetries:

$$
\begin{align*}
R^{i}{ }_{j k l} & =-R^{i}{ }_{j l k} & \text { is always the case, }  \tag{18.12}\\
\sum_{(j k l)} R^{i}{ }_{j k l} & =0 & \text { 1st Bianchi identity },  \tag{18.13}\\
\sum_{(k l m)} R_{j k l ; m}^{i} & =0 & \text { 2nd Bianchi identity. } \tag{18.14}
\end{align*}
$$

Eqs. 18.13) and 18.14 are valid for vanishing torsion. Here $\sum_{(j k l)}$ denotes the cyclic sum. Additionally,

$$
\begin{align*}
& R_{i j k l}=-R_{j i k l}  \tag{18.15}\\
& R_{i j k l}=R_{k l i j} \tag{18.16}
\end{align*}
$$

for the Riemannian connection with $R_{i j k l}=g_{i s} R^{s}{ }_{j k l}$.
$\underline{\text { Ricci and Einstein tensor }}$

$$
\begin{array}{rlr}
R_{i k} & =R^{j}{ }_{i j k} & \text { Ricci tensor } \\
\mathcal{R} & =R^{i}{ }_{i} & \text { scalar curvature } \\
G_{i k} & =R_{i k}-\frac{1}{2} \mathcal{R} g_{i k} & \text { Einstein tensor } \tag{18.19}
\end{array}
$$

By symmetry, $R_{i k}=R_{k i}, G_{i k}=G_{k i}$ and

$$
\begin{align*}
R_{i ; k}^{k} & =\frac{1}{2} \mathcal{R}_{; i},  \tag{18.20}\\
G_{i ; k}^{k} & =0, \tag{18.21}
\end{align*}
$$

which are the contracted 2nd Bianchi identity.

Proof: $R_{i k}=g^{j l} R_{l i j k}=g^{j l} R_{j k l i}$, 2nd Bianchi identity gives:

$$
R_{j k l ; m}^{i}+R_{j l m ; k}^{i}+R_{j m k ; l}^{i}=0 .
$$

Then we take the ( $i k$ )-trace:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R_{j l ; m}+\underbrace{R_{j l m ; i}^{i}}_{-g^{i k} R_{j k l m ; i}}-R_{j m ; l}=0 \\
& R_{l ; m}^{j}-g^{i k} R_{k l m ; i}^{j}-R_{m ; l}^{j}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

( $j m$ )-trace:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \underbrace{R_{l ; j}^{j}+g^{i k} R_{k l ; i}}_{2 R^{j}{ }_{l ; j}}-R_{; l}=0 . \\
& \Rightarrow 18.20
\end{aligned}
$$

For (18.21):

$$
\begin{aligned}
G_{i}^{k} & =R^{k}{ }_{i}-\frac{1}{2} g^{k}{ }_{i} \mathcal{R}=R^{k}{ }_{i}-\frac{1}{2} \delta^{k}{ }_{i} \mathcal{R} \\
G^{k}{ }_{i ; k} & =R^{k}{ }_{i ; k}-\frac{1}{2}\left(\delta_{i}^{k} \mathcal{R}\right)_{; k}=\underbrace{\frac{1}{2} \mathcal{R}_{; i}}_{18.20}-\frac{1}{2} \mathcal{R}_{; i}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

Without proof in $n$ dimensions, the Riemann tensor has $c_{n}=\frac{n^{2}\left(n^{2}-1\right)}{12}$ independent components ( $\left.c_{1}=0, c_{2}=1, c_{3}=6, c_{4}=20\right)$.

## Part V

## General Relativity

## 19 Physical laws with gravitation

### 19.1 Mechanics

The physical laws are relations among tensors (scalars and vectors being tensors of rank 0 and 1 respectively). Thus the physical laws read the same in all coordinate systems (provided the physical quantities are transformed suitably) and satisfy general covariance (same form). Practically, this means that from the special relativity laws that hold in absence of gravitation, we have to replace $\eta_{\alpha \beta}$ by $g_{\alpha \beta}$ and replace derivation by covariant derivation.

In an inertial system, we have the equation of motion (see 4.3)

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \frac{\mathrm{~d} u^{\alpha}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}=f^{\alpha} \tag{19.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

According to the equivalence principle, 19.1 holds in a local IS. $f^{\alpha}$ does not contain gravitational forces as they would vanish in a local IS. We transform it to general KS (coordinate system), then the Lorentz vector $f^{\alpha}$ gets transformed to $f^{\mu}=\frac{\partial x^{\mu}}{\partial \xi^{\alpha}} f^{\alpha}\left(\xi^{\alpha}\right.$ is in local IS, $x^{\mu}$ is in KS). Equation (19.1) holds in a local IS reads then

$$
m \underbrace{\frac{\mathrm{D} u^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}}_{\begin{array}{c}
\text { covariant derivative }  \tag{19.2}\\
\text { given in } \\
\frac{16.8}{}
\end{array}}=f^{\mu},
$$

$\left(\nabla_{X} \rightarrow \frac{\mathrm{D}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}\right)$ with $\xi^{\mu} \rightarrow u^{\mu}\left(\mathrm{d} t \rightarrow \mathrm{~d} \tau\right.$ and $\left.\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{i}}{\mathrm{~d} \tau}=u^{i}\right)$ and thus

$$
\frac{\mathrm{D} u^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}=\frac{\mathrm{d} u^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}+\Gamma_{\nu \lambda}^{\mu} u^{\nu} u^{\lambda}
$$

Then equation 19.2 reads

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \frac{\mathrm{~d} u^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \tau}=f^{\mu}-m \Gamma_{\nu \lambda}^{\mu} u^{\nu} u^{\lambda} \tag{19.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

We see that on the right hand side there are now gravitational forces appearing explicitly (via $\Gamma_{\nu \lambda}^{\mu}$ ). Equation 19.3 (or 19.2 ) is covariant (it has the same form in all coordinate systems) and reduces for $g_{\mu \nu} \rightarrow \eta_{\alpha \beta}$ (thus $\Gamma_{\nu \lambda}^{\mu}=0$ ) to equation (19.1) (in a local IS). The components of $u^{\mu}$ are not independent but satisfy the condition $g_{\mu \nu} u^{\mu} u^{\nu}=c^{2}$.

### 19.2 Electrodynamics

According to the equivalence principle, Maxwell's equations (see (6.4) and (6.5))

$$
\partial_{\alpha} F^{\alpha \beta}=\frac{4 \pi}{c} j^{\beta} \quad \text { and } \quad \epsilon^{\alpha \beta \gamma \delta} \partial_{\beta} F_{\gamma \delta}=0
$$

are valid in a local IS. Applying the covariance principle, they become as follows in a general KS:

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{; \nu}^{\mu \nu}=\frac{4 \pi}{c} j^{\mu} \quad \text { and } \quad \epsilon^{\mu \nu \lambda \kappa} F_{\lambda \kappa ; \nu}=0 \tag{19.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

provided that going from coordinates $\xi^{\alpha}$ in a local IS to the KS coordinates $x^{\mu}$ we have

$$
j^{\alpha} \rightarrow j^{\mu}=\frac{\partial x^{\mu}}{\partial \xi^{\alpha}} j^{\alpha} \quad \text { and } \quad F^{\mu \nu}=\frac{\partial x^{\mu}}{\partial \xi^{\alpha}} \frac{\partial x^{\nu}}{\partial \xi^{\beta}} F^{\alpha \beta}
$$

Gravity enters via the $\Gamma_{\nu \lambda}^{\mu}$ in the covariant derivative. The continuity equation $\partial_{\alpha} j^{\alpha}=0$ translates to $j^{\mu}{ }_{; \mu}=0$. It can be shown that in the homogeneous equation the terms with $\Gamma$ vanish. Thus the covariant derivative reduces to the ordinary derivative (, ${ }^{16}$.

### 19.3 Energy-momentum tensor

For an ideal fluid, given by (in a local IS)

$$
\begin{equation*}
T^{\mu \nu}=\left(\rho+\frac{p}{c^{2}}\right) u^{\mu} u^{\nu}-\eta^{\mu \nu} p \tag{19.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

- $u^{\mu}$ : four-velocity,
- $\rho$ : proper energy density,
- $p$ : pressure of the fluid.

In a KS this becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
T^{\mu \nu}=\left(\rho+\frac{p}{c^{2}}\right) u^{\mu} u^{\nu}-g^{\mu \nu} p \tag{19.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the IS the conservation law implies $T^{\mu \nu}{ }_{, \nu}=0$ and in the KS $T^{\mu \nu}{ }_{; \nu}=0$ (explicitely, $T^{\mu \nu}{ }_{; \nu}=$ $T^{\mu \nu}{ }_{, \nu}+\Gamma_{\nu \lambda}^{\mu} T^{\nu \lambda}+\Gamma_{\nu \lambda}^{\nu} T^{\mu \lambda}=0$ ). With 19.5, $\Gamma_{\nu \lambda}^{\nu}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{g}} \frac{\partial \sqrt{g}}{\partial x^{\lambda}}$, we get instead

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{; \nu}^{\mu \nu}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{g}} \frac{\partial \sqrt{g} T^{\mu \nu}}{\partial x^{\nu}}+\Gamma_{\nu \lambda}^{\mu} T^{\nu \lambda}=0 . \tag{19.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is no longer a conservation law, as we cannot form any constant of motion from 19.10. This should also not be expected, since the system under consideration can exchange energy and momentum with the gravitational field.

$$
{ }^{16} g=\operatorname{det}\left(g_{i k}\right)=\epsilon^{i_{1} \ldots i_{n}} g_{1 i_{1}} \ldots g_{n i_{n}} . \text { Consider } \frac{\partial g}{\partial x^{l}}=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \epsilon^{i_{1} \ldots i_{n}} g_{1 i_{1}} \ldots \frac{\partial g_{k i_{k}}}{\partial x^{l}} \ldots g_{n i_{n}} \text { and use } \frac{\partial g_{k i i_{k}}}{\partial x^{l}}=\frac{\partial g_{k m}}{\partial x^{l}} \delta^{m} i_{k}=
$$

$\frac{\partial g_{k m}}{\partial x^{l}} g^{m r} g_{r i_{k}}$. Due to the antisymmetry of $\epsilon$, only the term $r=k$ survives. Thus

$$
\frac{\partial g}{\partial x^{l}}=\frac{\partial g_{k m}}{\partial x^{l}} g^{m k} g
$$

Plugging this into the definition of $\Gamma_{k l}^{k}$ (one contraction):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{k l}^{k}=\frac{g^{k m}}{2}(\frac{\partial g_{m k}}{\partial x^{l}}+\underbrace{(m \leftrightarrow k)}_{\text {vanish by interchanging }} \boldsymbol{\frac { \partial g _ { m l } } { \partial x ^ { k } } - \frac { \partial g _ { k l } } { \partial x ^ { m } }})=\frac{g^{k m}}{2} \frac{\partial g_{m k}}{\partial x^{l}}=\frac{\partial \ln \sqrt{g}}{\partial x^{l}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{g}} \frac{\partial \sqrt{g}}{\partial x^{l}} \tag{19.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

With 19.5 one can show that the inhomogeneous Maxwell equation in KS can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{\sqrt{g}} \frac{\partial\left(\sqrt{g} F^{\mu \nu}\right)}{\partial x^{\nu}}=\frac{4 \pi}{c^{2}} j^{\mu} \tag{19.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the continuity equation: $j^{\mu}{ }_{; \mu}=0$ becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial\left(\sqrt{g} j^{\mu}\right)}{\partial x^{\mu}}=0 \tag{19.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 20 Einstein's field equations

The field equations cannot be derived by using the covariance principle, since there is no equivalent equation in a local IS. We have to make some requirements/assumptions.

Requirements:

- The Newtonian limit is well confirmed through all observations: $\Delta \phi=4 \pi G \rho$.
- From the Newtonian limit of the equation of motion for a particle we derived (equation (9.17)) $g_{00} \approx 1+2 \frac{\phi}{c^{2}}$.
- The non-relativistic limit should then be

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta g_{00}=\frac{8 \pi G}{c^{4}} T_{00} \tag{20.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $T_{00} \approx \rho c^{2}$ (other $T_{i j}$ are small).
Thus a generalization should lead to something of type $G_{\mu \nu}=\frac{8 \pi G}{c^{4}} T_{\mu \nu}$ where $G_{\mu \nu}$ has to satisfy the following requirements:
(1) $G_{\mu \nu}$ is a tensor ( $T_{\mu \nu}$ is tensor).
(2) $G_{\mu \nu}$ has the "dimension" of a second derivative. If we assume that no new dimensional constant enter in $G_{\mu \nu}$ then it has to be a linear combination of terms which are either second derivatives of the metric $g_{\mu \nu}$ or quadratic in the first derivative of $g_{\mu \nu}$.
(3) Since $T_{\mu \nu}$ is symmetric, $G_{\mu \nu}$ also has to be symmetric and due to the fact that $T_{\mu \nu}$ is covariantly conserved, i.e. $T^{\mu \nu}{ }_{; \nu}=0$, it follows that $G_{\mu \nu}$ must satisfy $G_{\mu \nu}=G_{\nu \mu}$ and $G_{\mu \nu}{ }^{; \nu}=0$.
(4) For a weak stationary field we shall get 20.1, thus $G_{00} \simeq \Delta g_{00}$.

Conditions (1)-(4) determine $G_{\mu \nu}$ uniquely. (1) and (2) imply that $G_{\mu \nu}$ has to be a linear combination

$$
\begin{equation*}
G_{\mu \nu}=a R_{\mu \nu}+b \mathcal{R} g_{\mu \nu} \tag{20.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

of $R_{\mu \nu}$, the Ricci tensor, and $\mathcal{R}$, the Ricci scalar The symmetry of $G_{\mu \nu}$ is automatically satisfied. The contracted Bianchi identity (18.20, 18.21) suggests that $G_{\mu \nu}{ }^{; \nu}=0$ on the Einstein tensor, what implies $b=-\frac{a}{2}$. Thus we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
G_{\mu \nu}=a\left(R_{\mu \nu}-\frac{1}{2} g_{\mu \nu} \mathcal{R}\right)=\frac{8 \pi G}{c^{4}} T_{\mu \nu} \tag{20.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

The constant $a$ has to be determined by performing the Newtonian limit. Consider weak fields: $g_{\mu \nu}=\eta_{\mu \nu}+h_{\mu \nu},\left|h_{\mu \nu}\right| \ll 1$ (non relativistic velocities: $v^{i} \ll c$ ), then $\left|T_{i k}\right| \ll\left|T_{00}\right| \Rightarrow\left|G_{i k}\right| \ll\left|G_{00}\right|$. Compute the trace of $G_{\mu \nu}$ :

$$
g^{\mu \nu} G_{\mu \nu}\left\{\begin{array}{l}
=a(\mathcal{R}-2 \mathcal{R})=-a \mathcal{R}  \tag{20.4}\\
\approx G_{00}=a(R_{00}-\frac{\mathcal{R}}{2} \underbrace{g_{00}}_{\substack{\approx \eta_{00} \\
=1}})=a\left(R_{00}-\mathcal{R} / 2\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

[^10]Compairing the two results gives $\mathcal{R} \approx-2 R_{00}$, thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
G_{00} \simeq a\left(R_{00}-\frac{\mathcal{R}}{2}\right) \simeq 2 a R_{00} \tag{20.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

For weak fields all terms quadratic in $h_{\mu \nu}$ can be neglected in the Riemann tensor; we get to leading order:

$$
R_{\mu \nu}=R^{\rho}{ }_{\mu \rho \nu} \simeq \frac{\partial \Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\rho}}{\partial x^{\rho}}-\frac{\partial \Gamma_{\rho \mu}^{\rho}}{\partial x^{\nu}} \quad\left(\left|h_{\mu \nu}\right| \ll 1\right)
$$

For weak stationary fields we find:

$$
R_{00}=\frac{\partial \Gamma_{00}^{i}}{\partial x^{i}} \quad \text { with } \quad \Gamma_{00}^{i}=\frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial g_{00}}{\partial x^{i}}
$$

Thus $G_{00} \approx 2 a \frac{\partial \Gamma_{00}^{i}}{\partial x^{i}}=a \Delta g_{00} \stackrel{!}{=} \Delta g_{00}$, therefore $a=1$. Einstein's field equations are 18 (found 1915 by Albert Einstein):

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mu \nu}-\frac{\mathcal{R}}{2} g_{\mu \nu}=\frac{8 \pi G}{c^{4}} T_{\mu \nu} \tag{20.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Together with the geodesic equation $(\sqrt{16.12})$ or $\sqrt[19.3]{ })$, these are the fundamental equations of general relativity. By contraction of 20.6, we find also

$$
\begin{equation*}
R^{\mu}{ }_{\mu}-\frac{\mathcal{R}}{2} \underbrace{\delta^{\mu}{ }_{\mu}}_{=4}=-\mathcal{R}=\frac{8 \pi G}{c^{4}} T . \tag{20.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\mathcal{R}$ can be expressed in 20.6 in terms of $T$, and we get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mu \nu}=\frac{8 \pi G}{c^{4}}\left(T_{\mu \nu}-\frac{T}{2} g_{\mu \nu}\right) \tag{20.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

an equivalent version of the field equations. For the vacuum case where $T_{\mu \nu}=0$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mu \nu}=0 \tag{20.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Significance of the Bianchi identity

Einstein's equation constitutes a set of non-linear coupled partial differential equations whose general solution is not known. Usually one makes some assumptions, for instance spherical symmetry. Because the Ricci tensor is symmetric, the Einstein equations constitute a set of 10 algebraically independent second order differential equations for $g_{\mu \nu}$.

The Einstein equations are generally covariant, so that they can at best determine the metric up to coordinate transformation ( $\rightarrow 4$ functions). Therefore we expect only 6 independent generally covariant equations for the metric. Indeed the (contracted) Bianchi identities tell us that (equation (18.21) $G^{\nu}{ }_{\mu ; \nu}=0$ and hence there are 4 differential relations among the Einstein's equations. Bianchi identities can also be understood as a consequence of the general covariance of the Einstein equations.

[^11]
### 20.1 The cosmological constant

As a generalization, one can relax condition (2) and have a linear term in $g_{\mu \nu}{ }^{19}$ The field equations become

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mu \nu}-\frac{\mathcal{R}}{2} g_{\mu \nu}-\Lambda g_{\mu \nu}=\frac{8 \pi G}{c^{4}} T_{\mu \nu} \tag{20.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Lambda$ is a constant: the cosmological constant $\left([\Lambda]=L^{-2}\right)$. For point (4) the Newtonian limit of 20.10) leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \phi=4 \pi \rho G+\frac{c^{2}}{2} \Lambda \tag{20.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

The right-hand side can also be written as $4 \pi G\left(\rho+\rho_{\text {vacuum }}\right)$, with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho_{\mathrm{vac}}=\frac{c^{2}}{8 \pi G} \Lambda \tag{20.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\Lambda$ corresponds to the (constant) energy density of empty space (vacuum). $\Lambda^{-1 / 2}$ (distance) has to be much larger than the dimension of the solar system.

## 21 The Einstein-Hilbert action

The field equations 20.6 can be obtained from a covariant variational principle. The action for the metric $g$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{\mathcal{D}}[g]=\int_{\mathcal{D}} \mathcal{R}(g) \mathrm{d} v, \tag{21.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{D} \subset \mathcal{M}$ is a compact region space-time, $\mathcal{R}$ is a scalar curvature and $\mathrm{d} v$ a volume element:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} v=\sqrt{|g|} \mathrm{d}^{4} x \tag{21.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

( $g=\operatorname{det} g_{i k}, \mathrm{~d}^{4} x$ in 4 dimensions). The Euler-Lagrange equations are the field equations in vacuum:

$$
\delta S_{\mathcal{D}}[g]=0
$$

We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta \int_{\mathcal{D}} \mathcal{R}(g) \mathrm{d} v=\int_{\mathcal{D}} \delta\left(g^{\mu \nu} R_{\mu \nu} \sqrt{-g}\right) \mathrm{d}^{4} x=\int_{\mathcal{D}}\left(\delta R_{\mu \nu}\right) g^{\mu \nu} \sqrt{-g} \mathrm{~d}^{4} x+\int_{\mathcal{D}} R_{\mu \nu} \delta\left(g^{\mu \nu} \sqrt{-g}\right) \mathrm{d}^{4} x . \tag{21.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider first $\delta R_{\mu \nu}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mu \nu}=\partial_{\alpha} \Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\alpha}-\partial_{\nu} \Gamma_{\mu \alpha}^{\alpha}+\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\rho} \Gamma_{\rho \alpha}^{\alpha}-\Gamma_{\nu \alpha}^{\rho} \Gamma_{\rho \mu}^{\alpha} . \tag{21.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us compute the variation of $R_{\mu \nu}$ at any point $p$ in normal coordinates, whose center is in $p$ itself $\left(x(p)=0\right.$, then $\left.\Gamma_{\beta \gamma}^{\alpha}(0)=0\right)$. Thus $\delta R_{\mu \nu}$ reduces (at any such $p$ ) to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta R_{\mu \nu}=\left(\delta \Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\alpha}\right)_{, \alpha}-\left(\delta \Gamma_{\mu \alpha}^{\alpha}\right)_{, \nu} \tag{21.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^12]Without proof one finds that $\delta \Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\alpha}$ is indeed a tensor although $\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\alpha}$ is not a tensor. 21.5 is thus a tensor equation, it holds in every coordinate system and we can also take the covariant derivative:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta R_{\mu \nu}=\left(\delta \Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\alpha}\right)_{; \alpha}-\left(\delta \Gamma_{\mu \alpha}^{\alpha}\right)_{; \nu} \tag{21.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

(Palatini identity). Since $g_{\mu \nu ; \sigma}=0$ we can write 21.6) as

$$
\begin{align*}
g^{\mu \nu} \delta R_{\mu \nu} & =\left(g^{\mu \nu} \delta \Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\alpha}\right)_{; \alpha}-\left(g^{\mu \nu} \delta \Gamma_{\mu \alpha}^{\alpha}\right)_{; \nu}  \tag{21.7}\\
& =\omega^{\alpha}{ }_{; \alpha} \\
& =\omega^{\alpha}{ }_{, \alpha}+\underbrace{\Gamma_{\alpha \mu}^{\alpha}}_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{-g}} \frac{\partial \sqrt{-g}}{\partial x^{\mu}}} \omega^{\mu} \\
& =\frac{1}{\sqrt{-g}} \frac{\partial\left(\sqrt{-g} \omega^{\mu}\right)}{\partial x^{\mu}} . \tag{21.8}
\end{align*}
$$

Inserting this into the integral 21.3 and applying (Gauss theorem), we get

$$
\int_{\mathcal{D}}\left(\operatorname{div}_{g} \omega\right) \eta=\int_{\partial \mathcal{D}} i_{\omega} \eta
$$

where $\operatorname{div}_{g} \omega=\omega^{\alpha}{ }_{; \alpha}$ and thus

$$
\int_{\mathcal{D}}\left(\delta R_{\mu \nu}\right) g^{\mu \nu} \sqrt{-g} \mathrm{~d}^{4} x=\int_{\partial \mathcal{D}} \omega^{\alpha} \sqrt{-g} \mathrm{~d} 0_{\alpha} .
$$

$\mathrm{d} 0_{\alpha}$ is the coordinate normal to $\partial \mathcal{D}$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\omega^{\alpha}=g^{\mu \nu} \delta \Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\alpha}-g^{\mu \alpha} \delta \Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\nu} \tag{21.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a vector field. If the variations of $\delta g^{\mu \nu}$ vanish outside a region contained in $\mathcal{D}$, then the boundary term vanishes as well.

As for the second term in 21.3) $\left(\int_{\mathcal{D}} R_{\mu \nu} \delta\left(g^{\mu \nu} \sqrt{-g}\right) \mathrm{d}^{4} x\right)$, we recall that for an $n \times n$ matrix $A(\lambda)$ we have (see linear algebra):
i) $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda} \operatorname{det} A=\operatorname{det} A \operatorname{tr}\left(A^{-1} \frac{\mathrm{~d} A}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)$,
ii) $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda}\left(A^{-1}\right) A=-A^{-1} \frac{\mathrm{~d} A}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}$.

Thus $\left(\delta g^{\mu \nu}\right) g_{\nu \sigma}=-g^{\mu \nu} \delta g_{\nu \sigma}$ comes from ii) and $\delta g=g g^{\mu \nu} \delta g_{\nu \mu}$ comes from i) with $A^{-1}=g^{\mu \nu}$. Hence we find the desired expressions

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta \sqrt{-g} & =\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{-g} g^{\mu \nu} \delta g_{\nu \mu}=-\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{-g} g_{\alpha \beta} \delta g^{\alpha \beta}, \\
\delta\left(g^{\mu \nu} \sqrt{-g}\right) & =\sqrt{-g} \delta g^{\mu \nu}-\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{-g} g^{\mu \nu} g_{\alpha \beta} \delta g^{\alpha \beta} . \tag{21.10}
\end{align*}
$$

[^13]And thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
0=\int_{\mathcal{D}} R_{\mu \nu} \delta\left(g^{\mu \nu} \sqrt{-g}\right) \mathrm{d}^{4} x & =\int_{\mathcal{D}} \underbrace{\sqrt{-g} \mathrm{~d}^{4} x}_{\mathrm{d} v}(R_{\mu \nu} \delta g^{\mu \nu}-\frac{1}{2} \underbrace{R_{\mu \nu} g^{\mu \nu}}_{\mathcal{R}} \underbrace{g_{\alpha \beta} \delta g^{\alpha \beta}}_{\substack{\alpha \rightarrow \mu \\
\beta \rightarrow \nu}}) \\
& =\int_{\mathcal{D}} \mathrm{d} v \underbrace{\left(R_{\mu \nu}-\frac{1}{2} \mathcal{R} g_{\mu \nu}\right)}_{=G_{\mu \nu}=0} \delta g^{\mu \nu}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore $\delta S_{\mathcal{D}}\left[g_{\mu \nu}\right]=0 \Rightarrow G_{\mu \nu}=R_{\mu \nu}-\frac{1}{2} \mathcal{R} g_{\mu \nu}=0$. Since $\delta \int_{\mathcal{D}} \sqrt{-g} \mathrm{~d}^{4} x=\int_{\mathcal{D}} \sqrt{-g} \mathrm{~d}^{4} x \frac{1}{2} g^{\mu \nu} \delta g_{\mu \nu}=$ $-\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathcal{D}} \sqrt{-g} \mathrm{~d}^{4} x g_{\mu \nu} \delta g^{\mu \nu}$, it follows that if we have a cosmological constant, the Einstein's vacuum equations are obtained from the action principle applied on

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{\mathcal{D}}[g]=\int_{\mathcal{D}}(\mathcal{R}-2 \Lambda) \sqrt{-g} \mathrm{~d}^{4} x \tag{21.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

The variational principle extends to matter described by any field $\psi=\left(\psi_{A}\right)(A=1, \ldots, N)$, (we include also the electromagnetic field among the $\psi_{A}$ ) transforming as a tensor under change of coordinates. Consider an action of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{\mathcal{D}}[\psi]=\int_{\mathcal{D}} \mathcal{L}\left(\psi, \nabla_{g} \psi\right) \sqrt{-g} \mathrm{~d}^{4} x \tag{21.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\nabla_{g}$ is the Riemannian connection of the metric $g$. If we know $\mathcal{L}$ in flat space, the equivalence principle prescribes to replace $\eta_{\alpha \beta}$ by $g_{\alpha \beta}$ and replace ordinary derivatives by covariant ones.

Example: electromagnetic field

$$
\mathcal{L}=-\frac{1}{16 \pi} F_{\mu \nu} F^{\mu \nu}=-\frac{1}{16 \pi} F_{\mu \nu} F_{\sigma \rho} g^{\sigma \mu} g^{\rho \nu}
$$

and the Euler-Lagrange equations in this case ( $F_{\mu \nu}=A_{\nu ; \mu}-A_{\mu ; \nu}=A_{\nu, \mu}-A_{\mu, \nu}$ ) for the basic 4-potential $A_{\mu}$ field read:

$$
\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial A_{\nu}}-\nabla_{\mu} \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \nabla_{\mu} A_{\nu}}=0, \quad \text { with } \nabla_{\mu} A_{\nu}=A_{\nu ; \mu}
$$

in this case $\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial A_{\nu}}=0$, and $\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \nabla_{\mu} A_{\nu}}=-\frac{1}{4 \pi} F^{\mu \nu}$. The Euler-Lagrange equations are then $F^{\mu \nu}{ }_{; \nu}=0$, which are the Maxwell equations for vanishing current $j^{\mu}\left(F^{\mu \nu}{ }_{; \nu}=\frac{4 \pi}{c} j^{\mu}\right.$ and $\mathcal{L}=-\frac{1}{16 \pi} F_{\mu \nu} F^{\mu \nu}-\frac{1}{c} j^{\mu} A_{\mu}$ with $\left.j^{\mu} A_{\mu}=g^{\mu \nu} j_{\nu} A_{\mu}\right)$.

Variations in 21.12 with respect to the fields $\psi_{A}$ lead to the Euler-Lagrange equations, whereas variations with respect to the metric (which is also a function and is determined by solving Einstein's equations) gives (without proof)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta_{g} \int_{\mathcal{D}} \mathcal{L}\left(\psi, \nabla_{g} \psi\right) \sqrt{-g} \mathrm{~d}^{4} x=-\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathcal{D}} T^{\mu \nu} \delta g_{\mu \nu} \sqrt{-g} \mathrm{~d}^{4} x \tag{21.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

This term has to be added to the one proportional to $\delta g_{\mu \nu}$ in Einstein's action:

$$
\int_{\mathcal{D}} \sqrt{-g} \mathrm{~d}^{4} x \underbrace{\left(G_{\mu \nu} \frac{c^{4}}{16 \pi G}-\frac{1}{2} T_{\mu \nu}\right)}_{=0} \delta g^{\mu \nu}
$$

and thus $G_{\mu \nu}=\frac{8 \pi G}{c^{4}} T_{\mu \nu}$. For electrodynamics: $T_{\mu \nu}=\frac{1}{4 \pi}\left(F_{\mu \sigma} F_{\nu}^{\sigma}-\frac{1}{4} F_{\sigma \rho} F^{\sigma \rho} g_{\mu \nu}\right)\left(\right.$ or $T^{\alpha \beta}=-F_{\mu}^{\alpha} F^{\mu \beta}-$ $\left.\mathcal{L} g^{\alpha \beta}\right)$. And similarly for other "matter" fields.

## 22 Static isotropic metric

### 22.1 Form of the metric

For the gravity field of Earth and Sun we assume a spherically symmetric distribution of the matter (rotation velocities $v^{i} \ll c$ ). Thus we need a spherically symmetric and static solution for the metric $g_{\mu \nu}(x)$. We first give the general form of such a metric (static and isotropic) which we then use as an ansatz to solve the field equations. For $r \rightarrow \infty$, the Newtonian gravitational potential $\varphi=-\frac{G M}{r}$ goes to zero. Thus, asymptotically, the metric should be Minkowskian: $\mathrm{d} s^{2} \underset{r \rightarrow \infty}{=} c^{2} \mathrm{~d} t^{2}-\mathrm{d} r^{2}-r^{2}\left(\mathrm{~d} \theta^{2}+\right.$ $\sin ^{2} \theta \mathrm{~d} \phi^{2}$ ), in spherical coordinates $r, \theta, \phi$ and $t$. Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=B(r) c^{2} \mathrm{~d} t^{2}-A(r) \mathrm{d} r^{2}-C(r) r^{2}\left(\mathrm{~d} \theta^{2}+\sin ^{2} \theta \mathrm{~d} \phi^{2}\right) \tag{22.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Due to isotropy and time independence, $A, B$ and $C$ cannot depend on $\theta, \phi$ and $t$ (and no linear terms in $\mathrm{d} \theta$ and $\mathrm{d} \phi)$. Freedom in the choice of coordinates allows to introduce a new radial coordinate in (22.1): $C(r) r^{2} \rightarrow r^{2}$, thus $C(r)$ can be absorbed into $r$. We get the standard form:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=B(r) c^{2} \mathrm{~d} t^{2}-A(r) \mathrm{d} r^{2}-r^{2}\left(\mathrm{~d} \theta^{2}+\sin ^{2} \theta \mathrm{~d} \phi^{2}\right) \tag{22.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

( $\theta$ and $\phi$ have the same significance as in Minkowski coordinates). Due to our asymptotic requirements $(r \rightarrow \infty)$ we can assume that $B(r) \rightarrow 1$ and $A(r) \rightarrow 1$.

### 22.2 Robertson expansion

Even without knowing the solution to the field equations, we can give an expansion of the metric for weak fields outside the mass distribution. The metric can only depend on the total mass of the considered object (Earth or Sun for instance), on the distance from it and on the constants $G, c$. Since $A$ and $B$ are dimensionless, they can only depend on a combination of the dimensionless quantity $\frac{G M}{c^{2} r}$. For $\frac{G M}{c^{2} r} \ll 1$ we can then have the following expansion:

$$
\begin{align*}
B(r) & =1-2 \frac{G M}{c^{2} r}+2(\beta-\gamma)\left(\frac{G M}{c^{2} r}\right)^{2}+\ldots  \tag{22.3}\\
A(r) & =1+2 \gamma \frac{G M}{c^{2} r}+\ldots
\end{align*}
$$

which is the Robertson expansion. The linear term in $B(r)$ has no free parameter since it is constrained by the Newtonian limit: $g_{00} \simeq 1+2 \frac{\phi}{c^{2}}, \phi=-\frac{G M}{r}$ (Newtonian potential), therefore $B \rightarrow g_{00}$. The
coefficient $2(\beta-\gamma)$ comes from historical reasons, $\beta$ and $\gamma$ are independent coefficients. In the solar system, $\frac{G M}{c^{2} r} \leq \frac{G M}{c^{2} R_{\odot}} \simeq 2 \times 10^{-6}$, then only linear terms in $\gamma$ and $\beta$ play a role. For general relativity: $\gamma=\beta=1$ (Newtonian gravity: $\gamma=\beta=0$ ).

### 22.3 Christoffel symbols and Ricci tensor for the standard form

The metric tensor $g_{\mu \nu}$ is diagonal.

$$
\begin{array}{llll}
g_{00}=B(r) & g_{11}=-A(r) & g_{22}=-r^{2} & g_{33}=-r^{2} \sin ^{2} \theta \\
g^{00}=\frac{1}{B(r)} & g^{11}=-\frac{1}{A(r)} & g^{22}=-\frac{1}{r^{2}} & g^{33}=-\frac{1}{r^{2} \sin ^{2} \theta} \tag{22.5}
\end{array}
$$

The non-vanishing components of $\Gamma_{\lambda \mu}^{\sigma}=\frac{g^{\sigma \nu}}{2}\left(\frac{\partial g_{\mu \nu}}{\partial x^{\lambda}}+\frac{\partial g_{\lambda \nu}}{\partial x^{\mu}}-\frac{\partial g_{\mu \lambda}}{\partial x^{\nu}}\right)$ are

$$
\begin{array}{lrl}
\Gamma_{01}^{0}=\Gamma_{10}^{0}=\frac{B^{\prime}}{2 B} & \Gamma_{00}^{1}=\frac{B^{\prime}}{2 A} & \Gamma_{11}^{1}=\frac{A^{\prime}}{2 A} \\
\Gamma_{12}^{2}=\Gamma_{21}^{2}=\frac{1}{r} & \Gamma_{22}^{1}=-\frac{r}{A} & \Gamma_{33}^{1}=-\frac{r \sin ^{2} \theta}{A}  \tag{22.6}\\
\Gamma_{13}^{3}=\Gamma_{31}^{3}=\frac{1}{r} & \Gamma_{23}^{3}=\Gamma_{32}^{3}=\cot \theta & \Gamma_{33}^{2}=-\sin \theta \cos \theta
\end{array}
$$

where ' stands for $\frac{\partial}{\partial r}$. With

$$
\begin{equation*}
-g=r^{4} A B \sin ^{2} \theta \tag{22.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\Gamma_{\mu \rho}^{\rho}\right)=\left(\frac{\partial \ln \sqrt{-g}}{\partial x^{\mu}}\right)=\left(0, \frac{2}{r}+\frac{A^{\prime}}{2 A}+\frac{B^{\prime}}{2 B}, \cot \theta, 0\right) \tag{22.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Ricci tensor can then be calculated as

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mu \nu}=\frac{\partial \Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\rho}}{\partial x^{\rho}}-\frac{\partial \Gamma_{\rho \mu}^{\rho}}{\partial x^{\nu}}+\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\sigma} \Gamma_{\rho \sigma}^{\rho}-\Gamma_{\rho \mu}^{\sigma} \Gamma_{\nu \sigma}^{\rho} \tag{22.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we get as a result

$$
\begin{align*}
R_{00} & =\frac{B^{\prime \prime}}{2 A}-\frac{A^{\prime} B^{\prime}}{2 A^{2}}-\frac{B^{\prime 2}}{2 A B}+\frac{B^{\prime}}{2 A}\left(\frac{2}{r}+\frac{A^{\prime}}{2 A}+\frac{B^{\prime}}{2 B}\right) \\
& =\frac{B^{\prime \prime}}{2 A}-\frac{B^{\prime}}{4 A}\left(\frac{A^{\prime}}{A}+\frac{B^{\prime}}{B}\right)+\frac{B^{\prime}}{r A}  \tag{22.10}\\
R_{11} & =-\frac{B^{\prime \prime}}{2 B}+\frac{B^{\prime}}{4 B}\left(\frac{A^{\prime}}{A}+\frac{B^{\prime}}{B}\right)+\frac{A^{\prime}}{r A}  \tag{22.11}\\
R_{22} & =1+\frac{r}{2 A}\left(\frac{A^{\prime}}{A}-\frac{B^{\prime}}{B}\right)-\frac{1}{A}  \tag{22.12}\\
R_{33} & =R_{22} \sin ^{2} \theta \tag{22.13}
\end{align*}
$$

The non-diagonal components $R_{\mu \nu}$ with $\mu \neq \nu$ vanish.

### 22.4 Schwarzschild metric

We assume a static, spherically symmetric, mass distribution with finite extension:

$$
\rho(r) \begin{cases}\neq 0 & r \leq r_{0}  \tag{22.14}\\ =0 & r>r_{0}\end{cases}
$$

Similarly, the pressure $P(r)$ is thought to vanish for $r>r_{0}$. The four velocity vector within the mass distribution in the static case is $u^{\mu}=\left(u^{0}=\right.$ constant, $\left.0,0,0\right)$. This way, the energy-momentum tensor (describing matter) does not depend on time. We then adopt the ansatz for the metric elaborated in 22.2): $g_{\mu \nu}=\operatorname{diag}\left(B(r),-A(r),-r^{2},-r^{2} \sin ^{2} \theta\right)$. Outside the mass distribution $\left(r \geq r_{0}\right)$, the Ricci tensor vanishes: $R_{\mu \nu}=0$. We have already calculated the coefficients $R_{\mu \nu}$ in equations 22.10 22.13. For $\mu \neq \nu, R_{\mu \nu}=0$ is trivially satisfied while the diagonal components should be set to zero: $R_{00}=R_{11}=R_{22}=R_{33}=0\left(r \geq r_{0}\right)$.

Consider $\frac{R_{00}}{B}+\frac{R_{11}}{A}=-\frac{1}{r A}\left(\frac{B^{\prime}}{B}+\frac{A^{\prime}}{A}\right)=0$ and thus $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d} r}(\ln A B)=0($ since $r A \neq 0)$ or $A B=$ constant (or $\ln A B=$ constant). For $r \rightarrow \infty$ we require $A=B=1$, therefore $A B=1 \Rightarrow A(r)=\frac{1}{B(r)}$. Introducing this into $R_{22}\left(22.12\right.$ and $R_{11}$ 22.11 leads to

$$
\begin{align*}
& R_{22}=1-r B^{\prime}-B=0  \tag{22.15}\\
& R_{11}=-\frac{B^{\prime \prime}}{2 B}-\frac{B^{\prime}}{r B}=-\frac{r B^{\prime \prime}+2 B^{\prime}}{2 r B}=\frac{1}{2 r B} \frac{\mathrm{~d} R_{22}}{\mathrm{~d} r}=0 \tag{22.16}
\end{align*}
$$

With 22.15, 22.16 is automatically satisified (since $R_{22}=0$ also its derivative vanishes). We write 22.15 as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} r}(r B)=1 \tag{22.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

We integrate it and get $r B=r+\underbrace{\text { constant }}_{-2 a}=r-2 a$. Then

$$
\begin{align*}
& B(r)=1-\frac{2 a}{r} \\
& A(r)=\frac{1}{1-\frac{2 a}{r}} \tag{22.18}
\end{align*}
$$

for $r \geq r_{0}$. This solution for the vacuum Einstein' equations was found in 1916 by Schwarzschild. The Schwarzschild solution is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=\left(1-\frac{2 a}{r}\right) c^{2} \mathrm{~d} t^{2}-\frac{\mathrm{d} r^{2}}{1-\frac{2 a}{r}}-r^{2}\left(\mathrm{~d} \theta^{2}+\sin ^{2} \theta \mathrm{~d} \varphi^{2}\right) \tag{22.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

The constant can be determined by considering the Newtonian limit:

$$
g_{00}=B(r) \xrightarrow[r \rightarrow \infty]{\longrightarrow} 1+2 \frac{\phi}{c^{2}}=1-2 \frac{G M}{c^{2} r}=1-\frac{2 a}{r}
$$

Thus one introduces the so called Schwarzschild radius:

$$
r_{S}=2 a=\frac{2 G M}{c^{2}}
$$

The Schwarzschild radius of the Sun is $r_{s, \odot}=\frac{2 G M_{\odot}}{c^{2}} \simeq 3 \mathrm{~km}\left(M_{\odot} \simeq 2 \times 10^{30} \mathrm{~kg}, R_{\odot}=7 \times 10^{5} \mathrm{~km}\right)$ so $\frac{r_{S, \odot}}{R_{\odot}}=\frac{2 G M_{\odot}}{c^{2} R_{\odot}} \simeq 4 \times 10^{-6} \quad 21$ A clock at rest in $r$ has the proper time $\mathrm{d} \tau=\sqrt{B} \mathrm{~d} t$, thus $\frac{\mathrm{d} t}{\mathrm{~d} \tau}$ diverges at $r \rightarrow r_{S}$. This implies that a photon emitted at $r=r_{S}$ will be infinitely redshifted ( t is not a good coordinate either for events taking place at $r \leq r_{S}$ ). A star, whose radius $r_{s t a r}$ is smaller than $r_{S}$, is a black hole since photons emitted at its surface cannot reach regions with $r>r_{S}$.

Expanding the Schwarzschild metric in power of $\frac{r_{S}}{r}$ and comparing it with the Robertson expansion (22.3), one finds $\beta=\gamma=1$ for general relativity.

## 23 General equations of motion

We now consider the motion of a freely falling material particle or photon in a static isotropic gravitational field (e.g. motion of planets around the Sun). For the relativistic orbit $x^{k}(\lambda)$ of a particle in a gravitational field we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} x^{k}}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda^{2}}=-\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{k} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{\nu}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda} \tag{23.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
g_{\mu \nu} \frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{\nu}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda}=\left(\frac{\mathrm{d} s}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}=c^{2}\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} \tau}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}= \begin{cases}c^{2} & m \neq 0, \quad \lambda=\tau  \tag{23.2}\\ 0 & m=0\end{cases}
$$

For a massive particle we can take the proper time as a parameter for the trajectory or orbit $(\mathrm{d} \lambda=\mathrm{d} \tau)$. For massless particles one has to choose another parameter. For the spherically symmetric gravitational field, we use the metric $\left(r>r_{\odot}\right.$, radius of the star)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=B(r) c^{2} \mathrm{~d} t^{2}-\mathrm{d} r^{2} A(r)-r^{2}\left(\mathrm{~d} \theta^{2}+\sin ^{2} \theta \mathrm{~d} \varphi^{2}\right) \tag{23.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the coordinates $\left(x^{0}, x^{1}, x^{2}, x^{3}\right)=(c t, r, \theta, \phi)$. Equations 23.1 - 23.3) define the relativistic Kepler problem. Using the Christoffel symbols given in 22.6, we get for 23.1:

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} x^{0}}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda^{2}} & =-\frac{B^{\prime}}{B} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{0}}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda} \frac{\mathrm{~d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}  \tag{23.4}\\
\frac{\mathrm{~d}^{2} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda^{2}} & =-\frac{B^{\prime}}{2 A}\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{0}}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}-\frac{A^{\prime}}{2 A}\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}+\frac{r}{A}\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} \theta}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}+\frac{r \sin ^{2} \theta}{A}\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} \phi}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}  \tag{23.5}\\
\frac{\mathrm{~d}^{2} \theta}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda^{2}} & =-\frac{2}{r} \frac{\mathrm{~d} \theta}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda} \frac{\mathrm{~d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}+\sin \theta \cos \theta\left(\frac{\mathrm{d} \phi}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}  \tag{23.6}\\
\frac{\mathrm{~d}^{2} \phi}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda^{2}} & =-\frac{2}{r} \frac{\mathrm{~d} \phi}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda} \frac{\mathrm{~d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}-2 \cot \theta \frac{\mathrm{~d} \theta}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda} \frac{\mathrm{~d} \phi}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda} \tag{23.7}
\end{align*}
$$

Equation 23.6 can be solved by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta=\frac{\pi}{2}=\text { constant } \tag{23.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Without loss of generality we can choose the coordinate system such that $\theta=\frac{\pi}{2}$, this way the trajectory lies on the plane with $\theta=\frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{\mathrm{~d}^{2} \theta}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda^{2}}=0$ corresponds to angular momentum conservation. With 23.8

[^14]we get for 23.7) :
\[

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{r^{2}} \frac{\mathrm{~d}}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\left(r^{2} \frac{\mathrm{~d} \phi}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)=0 \tag{23.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

\]

which leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
r^{2} \frac{\mathrm{~d} \phi}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}=\text { constant }=l \tag{23.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

$l$ can be interpreted as the (orbital) angular momentum (per unit mass). Equations 23.8) and 23.10 follow from angular momentum conservation, which is a consequence of spherical symmetry (rotation invariance).

Equation 23.4) can be written as $(B=B(r(\lambda))$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\left(\ln \left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{0}}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)+\ln B\right)=0 \tag{23.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

which can be integrated as $\ln \left[\left(\frac{d x^{0}}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right) B\right]=$ constant or

$$
\begin{equation*}
B \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{0}}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}=\text { constant }=F \tag{23.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

In 23.5 we use 23.8, 23.10 and 23.12 and get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}^{2} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda^{2}}+\frac{F^{2} B^{\prime}}{2 A B^{2}}+\frac{A^{\prime}}{2 A}\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}-\frac{l^{2}}{A r^{3}}=0 \tag{23.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

We multiply it with $2 A\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)$ and get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\left[A\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}+\frac{l^{2}}{r^{2}}-\frac{F^{2}}{B}\right]=0 . \tag{23.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integration gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
A\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}+\frac{l^{2}}{r^{2}}-\frac{F^{2}}{B}=-\epsilon=\text { constant } \tag{23.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating it once more we get $r=r(\lambda)$. Inserting then this result into 23.10 and 23.12, we obtain with one more integration $\phi=\phi(\lambda)$ and $t=t(\lambda)$. Next we eliminate $\lambda$ and get $r=r(t)$ and $\phi=\phi(t)$. Together with $\theta=\frac{\pi}{2}$, this is then a complete solution (generally it has to be done numerically).

Equation 23.2 becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
g_{\mu \nu} \frac{\mathrm{d} x^{\mu}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{\nu}}{\mathrm{d} \lambda}=B\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} x^{0}}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}-A\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}-r^{2}\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} \theta}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}-r^{2} \sin ^{2} \theta\left(\frac{\mathrm{~d} \phi}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}\right)^{2}=\epsilon \tag{23.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

using 23.8, 23.10, 23.12 and 23.15. On the other hand

$$
\epsilon=\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
c^{2} & (m \neq 0) \\
0 & (m=0)
\end{array} .\right.
$$

We are left with two integration constants, $F$ and $l$.

$$
{ }^{22} \text { Notice: } \frac{\mathrm{d} A}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}=A^{\prime} \frac{\mathrm{d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}
$$

### 23.1 Trajectory

From (23.15 we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}=\sqrt{\frac{\frac{F^{2}}{B}-\frac{l^{2}}{r^{2}}-\epsilon}{A}} \tag{23.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

and with 23.10,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} \phi}{\mathrm{~d} r}=\frac{\mathrm{d} \phi}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda} \frac{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}{\mathrm{~d} r}=\frac{l}{r^{2}} \sqrt{\frac{A}{\frac{F^{2}}{B}-\frac{l^{2}}{r^{2}}-\epsilon}} . \tag{23.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi(r)=\int \frac{\mathrm{d} r}{r^{2}} \sqrt{\frac{A(r)}{\frac{F^{2}}{B(r) l^{2}}-\frac{1}{r^{2}}-\frac{\epsilon}{l^{2}}}} . \tag{23.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

With this we can find the trajectory $\phi=\phi(r)$ in the orbital plane. (Massive particles: 2 integration constants $\frac{F^{2}}{l^{2}}$ and $\frac{\epsilon}{l^{2}}$, massless particles: only $\frac{F^{2}}{l^{2}}$ ).

## Trajectory in Schwarzschild metric:

Insert Schwarzschild metric: $B(r)=A^{-1}(r)=1-\frac{r_{S}}{r}=1-\frac{2 a}{r}$ and write:

$$
\dot{t}=\frac{\mathrm{d} t}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}, \quad \dot{r}=\frac{\mathrm{d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda}, \quad \dot{\phi}=\frac{\mathrm{d} \phi}{\mathrm{~d} \lambda} .
$$

Then with 23.8, 23.10, 23.12 and 23.15 we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta=\frac{\pi}{2}, \quad c \dot{t}\left(1-\frac{2 a}{r}\right)=F, \quad r^{2} \dot{\phi}=l . \tag{23.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Multiplying 23.15 with $B$ and using $A B=1$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\dot{r}^{2}}{2}-\frac{a \epsilon}{r}+\frac{l^{2}}{2 r^{2}}-\frac{a l^{2}}{r^{3}}=\frac{F^{2}-\epsilon}{2}=\text { constant. } \tag{23.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

The radial component can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\dot{r}^{2}}{2}+V_{\mathrm{eff}}(r)=\text { constant } \tag{23.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the effective potential $\left(2 a=\frac{2 G M}{c^{2}}, \epsilon=\left\{c^{2}, 0\right\}\right)$

$$
V_{\mathrm{eff}}(r)= \begin{cases}-\frac{G M}{r}+\frac{l^{2}}{2 r^{2}}-\frac{G M l^{2}}{c^{2} r^{3}} & (m \neq 0)  \tag{23.23}\\ \frac{l^{2}}{2 r^{2}}-\frac{G M l^{2}}{c^{2} r^{3}} & (m=0)\end{cases}
$$

A formal solution $r=r(\lambda)$ of 23.22 is given through the following integral :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda= \pm \int \frac{\mathrm{d} r}{\sqrt{2\left(\text { constant }-V_{e f f}(r)\right)}} \tag{23.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Due to the $\frac{1}{r^{3}}$ term (relativistic), this is an elliptical integral which has to be solved numerically.
For small values of $r$, centrifugal potential term dominates (as long as $l$ is not too small), then for even smaller values of $r$ the attractive relativistic term takes over: ${ }^{23} \sqrt{24}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& { }^{23} l \sim r \times v \rightarrow \frac{l^{2}}{r^{2}} \sim v^{2} \\
& { }^{24} \frac{v}{c} \sim 10^{-4} \rightarrow \frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}} \sim 10^{-8}
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 11: Effective potential for massive particles in Schwarzschild metric

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\frac{G M}{r} \frac{l^{2}}{c^{2} r^{2}} \simeq-\frac{G M}{r} \frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}} \tag{23.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

Eq. 23.22 differs from the non-relativistic case by an additional $\frac{1}{r^{3}}$ term and $\dot{r}=\frac{\mathrm{d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \tau}$ differs from $\frac{\mathrm{d} r}{\mathrm{~d} t}$ by terms of order $\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}$.

## Observations:

- Where $V_{\text {eff }}$ has a minimum there are bounded solutions, however due to the relativistic effects there will be small deviations from the elliptical orbits (precession of the perihelion). As a special case, with $\dot{r}=0$, the circular orbit is a possible solution (in which case the constant in 23.22 is equal to the value of $V_{\text {eff }}$ at its minimum).
- The solution at the maximum of $V_{\text {eff }}$ is an unstable circular orbit.
- If the constant is positive one gets non-bounded trajectories (corresponding to hyperbolic solutions in the non-relativistic case).
- If the constant is larger than the maximum value of the potential, the particle falls into the center.
- At minimum and maximum we have $\frac{\mathrm{d} V_{e f f}}{\mathrm{~d} r}=0$. For $m \neq 0$ we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{c^{2}}{l^{2}} r^{2}-2 \frac{r}{r_{S}}+3=0 \tag{23.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

In order to have two real solutions, we need $\frac{3 c^{2}}{l^{2}}<\frac{1}{r_{S}^{2}}$. That means

$$
\begin{equation*}
l \geq l_{c r i t}=\sqrt{3} r_{S} c \tag{23.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $l \rightarrow l_{\text {crit }}$, the angular momentum barrier gets smaller and smaller until the maximum and minimum fall together for $l=l_{\text {crit }}$. For $l<l_{\text {crit }}$, the potential decreases monotonically for $r \rightarrow 0$.


Figure 12: Effective potential for massless particles in Schwarzschild metric

Here both terms are proportional to $l^{2}$, thus the shape of $V_{\text {eff }}$ does not depend on $l$. At $r_{\max }=\frac{3}{2} r_{S}$ the potential has a maximum. At $r_{\text {max }}$ the photons can move on a circular orbit, which is unstable. If the constant in $\sqrt{23.22}$ is smaller than $V_{\text {eff }}\left(r_{\text {max }}\right)$ then the incoming photon will be scattered, whereas if the constant is bigger the photon will be absorbed at the center. ${ }^{25}$

[^15]
## Part VI

## Applications of General Relativity

## 24 Light deflection

The trajectory $r=r(\phi)$ of a photon in the gravitational field is given by $23.19(\epsilon=0)$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi(r)=\phi\left(r_{0}\right)+\int_{r_{0}}^{r} \frac{\mathrm{~d} \tilde{r}}{\tilde{r}^{2}} \sqrt{\frac{A(\tilde{r})}{\frac{F^{2}}{B(\tilde{r}) l^{2}}-\frac{1}{\tilde{r}^{2}}}} \tag{24.1}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 13: Deflection of light by the Sun

We will now show that light is deflected by a massive body, carrying through calculations for the Sun. In fig. 13, the following quantities are defined: light is deflected by $\Delta \phi$ and $r_{0}$ is the minimal distance (or impact parameter) from the Sun. For simplification we assume also $r_{0} \gg r_{S}$.

As starting point of the integration we choose the minimum distance $r_{0}$, where we set $\phi\left(r_{0}\right)=0$. Going from $r_{0}$ till $r_{\infty}$ the angle changes by $\phi(\infty)$. Along the drawn trajectory the radial vector turns by $2 \phi(\infty)$. If the trajectory would be a straight line, then $2 \phi(\infty)=\pi$.
Thus $\Delta \phi=\pi-\pi=0$ for a straight line and in general $\left(\phi\left(r_{0}\right)=0\right)$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \phi=2 \phi(\infty)-\pi \tag{24.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

At $r_{0}, r(\phi)$ is a minimum, thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\left(\frac{\mathrm{d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \phi}\right)\right|_{r_{0}}=0 \tag{24.3}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 14: Non-deflected ray of light

From 24.3 we get with 23.17 and 22.18 the condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{F^{2}}{l^{2}}=\frac{B\left(r_{0}\right)}{r_{0}^{2}} . \tag{24.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

This way we can eliminate the constants $F$ and $l$ in terms of $r_{0}$ with 24.1):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi(\infty)=\int_{r_{0}}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{d} r}{r} \sqrt{\frac{A(r)}{\frac{B\left(r_{0}\right)}{B(r)} \frac{r^{2}}{r_{0}^{2}}-1}} \tag{24.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us compute the integral by inserting the Robertson expansion $A(r)=1+\gamma \frac{2 a}{r}, B(r)=1-\frac{2 a}{r}$ (with $\left.a=\frac{r_{s}}{2}=\frac{G M}{c^{2}}\right)$. We keep terms up to $\frac{a}{r}$ with

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{B\left(r_{0}\right)}{B(r)} \frac{r^{2}}{r_{0}^{2}}-1 & \simeq \frac{r^{2}}{r_{0}^{2}}\left[1+2 a\left(\frac{1}{r}-\frac{1}{r_{0}}\right)\right]-1 \\
& =\left[\frac{r^{2}}{r_{0}^{2}}-1\right]\left[1-\frac{2 a r}{r_{0}\left(r+r_{0}\right)}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

We get using $\sqrt{1+x}=1+\frac{x}{2}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\phi(\infty) & \simeq \int_{r_{0}}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{d} r}{\sqrt{r^{2}-r_{0}^{2}}} \frac{r_{0}}{r}\left(1+\gamma \frac{a}{r}+\frac{a r}{r_{0}\left(r+r_{0}\right)}\right) \\
& =\left[\arccos \left(\frac{r_{0}}{r}\right)+\gamma \frac{a}{r_{0}} \frac{\sqrt{r^{2}-r_{0}^{2}}}{r}+\frac{a}{r_{0}} \sqrt{\frac{r-r_{0}}{r+r_{0}}}\right]_{r_{0}}^{\infty} \\
& =\frac{\pi}{2}+\gamma \frac{a}{r_{0}}+\frac{a}{r_{0}} . \tag{24.6}
\end{align*}
$$

With 24.2 we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \phi=\frac{4 a}{r_{0}}\left(\frac{1+\gamma}{2}\right)=\frac{2 r_{S}}{r_{0}}\left(\frac{1+\gamma}{2}\right) \tag{24.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

For general relativity, $\gamma=1, r_{S}=\frac{2 G M}{c^{2}}$ and thus

$$
\Delta \phi=\frac{2 r_{S}}{r_{0}}
$$

For a light ray which just grazes the surface of the $\operatorname{Sun}\left(r_{0}=R_{\odot}=7 \times 10^{5} \mathrm{~km}\right)$ we get ( $\pi=180 \times 3600^{\prime \prime}$ ):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \phi=1.75^{\prime \prime}\left(\frac{1+\gamma}{2}\right) \cdot{ }^{26} \tag{24.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

On May 29, 1919, an eclipse allowed experimental confirm of this result.


Figure 15: Gravitational lensing in the Abel 2218 galaxy cluster

[^16]
## 25 Perihelion precession

Consider the elliptical orbit of a planet around the Sun:


Figure 16: Non-relativistic elliptical orbit of Mercury around the Sun

We will use the following notations: minimum distance $r_{-}=r_{\min }$, maximum distance $r_{+}=r_{\max }$, $\phi_{ \pm}=\phi\left(r_{ \pm}\right), A_{ \pm}=A\left(r_{ \pm}\right), B_{ \pm}=B\left(r_{ \pm}\right)$. The relativistic orbit follows from equation 23.19 for $r=r(\phi)$ with $\epsilon=c^{2}$. The integral gives for the change in angle between $r_{-}$and $r_{+}$:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{+}-\phi_{-}=\int_{r_{-}}^{r_{+}} \frac{\mathrm{d} r}{r^{2}} \sqrt{\frac{A(r)}{\frac{F^{2}}{B(r) l^{2}}-\frac{1}{r^{2}}-\frac{c^{2}}{l^{2}}}}=\int_{r_{-}}^{r_{+}} \frac{\mathrm{d} r}{r^{2}} \sqrt{\frac{A(r)}{K(r)}} \tag{25.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

For a full orbit the angle is $2 \pi$, i.e. twice the integral 25.1). The shift of the perihelion (per complete orbit) is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \phi=2\left(\phi_{+}-\phi_{-}\right)-2 \pi \tag{25.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The integrand in 25.1 is equal to $\frac{\mathrm{d} \phi}{\mathrm{d} r}$. For $r=r_{ \pm}$due to $\frac{\mathrm{d} r}{\mathrm{~d} \phi}=0, \sqrt{K(r)} r^{2}$ has to vanish, thus $K\left(r_{ \pm}\right)=0$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{F^{2}}{B_{ \pm} l^{2}}=\frac{1}{r_{ \pm}^{2}}+\frac{c^{2}}{l^{2}} \tag{25.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

This way we can express $F$ and $l$ through $r_{ \pm}$:

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{F^{2}}{l^{2}} & =\frac{\frac{1}{r_{+}^{2}}-\frac{1}{r_{-}^{2}}}{\frac{1}{B_{+}}-\frac{1}{B_{-}}}=\frac{r_{-}^{2}-r_{+}^{2}}{r_{+}^{2} r_{-}^{2}\left(\frac{1}{B_{+}}-\frac{1}{B_{-}}\right)}  \tag{25.4}\\
\frac{c^{2}}{l^{2}} & =-\frac{\frac{B_{+}}{r_{+}^{2}}-\frac{B_{-}}{r_{-}^{2}}}{B_{+}-B_{-}}=-\frac{\frac{r_{+}^{2}}{B_{+}}-\frac{r_{-}^{2}}{B_{-}}}{r_{+}^{2} r_{-}^{2}\left(\frac{1}{B_{+}}-\frac{1}{B_{-}}\right)} \tag{25.5}
\end{align*}
$$

This leads us to an expression for $K(r)$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
K(r)=\frac{r_{-}^{2}\left(\frac{1}{B(r)}-\frac{1}{B_{-}}\right)-r_{+}^{2}\left(\frac{1}{B(r)}-\frac{1}{B_{+}}\right)}{r_{+}^{2} r_{-}^{2}\left(\frac{1}{B_{+}}-\frac{1}{B_{-}}\right)}-\frac{1}{r^{2}} . \tag{25.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $A$ and $B$ insert the Robertson expansion

$$
\begin{align*}
& A(r)=1+\gamma \frac{2 a}{r}+\ldots  \tag{25.7}\\
& B(r)=1-\frac{2 a}{r}+2(\beta-\gamma)\left(\frac{a}{r}\right)^{2}+\ldots  \tag{25.8}\\
& \frac{1}{B(r)}=1+\frac{2 a}{r}+2(2-\beta+\gamma)\left(\frac{a}{r}\right)^{2}+\ldots, 27 \tag{25.9}
\end{align*}
$$

With eq. 25.9, $K(r)$ becomes a quadratic form in $\frac{1}{r}$. Since $\frac{\mathrm{d} \phi}{\mathrm{d} r}=\infty$ for $r=r_{ \pm}, K_{+}=K_{-}=0$. This determines $K(r)$ up to a constant $\tilde{c}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
K(r)=\tilde{c}\left(\frac{1}{r_{-}}-\frac{1}{r}\right)\left(\frac{1}{r}-\frac{1}{r_{+}}\right) . \tag{25.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\tilde{c}$ can be obtained by comparing with 25.6 for $r \rightarrow \infty$. With 25.9 one gets

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{c}=1-(2-\beta+\gamma)\left(\frac{a}{r_{+}}+\frac{a}{r_{-}}\right) . \tag{25.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

We get thus the following integral:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{+}-\phi_{-}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tilde{c}}} \int_{r_{-}}^{r_{+}} \frac{\mathrm{d} r}{r^{2}} \underbrace{\left(1+\gamma \frac{a}{r}\right)}_{\text {from } \sqrt{ } A \approx 1+\gamma \frac{a}{r}}\left[\left(\frac{1}{r_{-}}-\frac{1}{r}\right)\left(\frac{1}{r}-\frac{1}{r_{+}}\right)\right]^{-\frac{1}{2}} \tag{25.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

We perform the following substitution:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{r}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{r_{+}}+\frac{1}{r_{-}}\right)+\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{r_{+}}-\frac{1}{r_{-}}\right) \sin \psi \tag{25.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^17]$r_{+}$and $r_{-}$correspond to $\psi=\frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\psi=-\frac{\pi}{2}$, respectively. With
\[

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{d}\left(\frac{1}{r}\right) & =-\frac{1}{r^{2}} \mathrm{~d} r=\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{r_{+}}-\frac{1}{r_{-}}\right) \cos \psi \mathrm{d} \psi,  \tag{25.14}\\
\frac{1}{r_{-}}-\frac{1}{r} & =\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{r_{-}}-\frac{1}{r_{+}}\right)(1+\sin \psi),  \tag{25.15}\\
\frac{1}{r}-\frac{1}{r_{+}} & =\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{r_{-}}-\frac{1}{r_{+}}\right)(1-\sin \psi), \tag{25.16}
\end{align*}
$$
\]

we get for the integral

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{+}-\phi_{-}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tilde{c}}} \int_{-\frac{\pi}{2}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \mathrm{~d} \psi\left[1+\gamma \frac{a}{2}\left(\frac{1}{r_{-}}+\frac{1}{r_{+}}\right)+\gamma \frac{a}{2}\left(\frac{1}{r_{+}}-\frac{1}{r_{-}}\right) \sin \psi\right] \tag{25.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now introduce the parameter $p$ of the ellipse (see figure 16):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{2}{p}=\frac{1}{r_{+}}+\frac{1}{r_{-}} \tag{25.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integration of eq. 25.17 leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{+}-\phi_{-}=\frac{\pi}{\sqrt{\tilde{c}}}\left[1+\gamma \frac{a}{p}\right]=\pi\left[1+(2-\beta+\gamma) \frac{a}{p}\right]\left[1+\gamma \frac{a}{p}\right]=\pi\left[1+(2-\beta+2 \gamma) \frac{a}{p}\right] \tag{25.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

Precession per orbit for the perihelion is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \phi=2\left(\phi_{+}-\phi_{-}\right)-2 \pi=\frac{6 \pi a}{p}\left(\frac{2-\beta+2 \gamma}{3}\right) \tag{25.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

In general relativity $\gamma=\beta=1$ and so $\frac{2-\beta+2 \gamma}{3}=1$. Thus,

$$
\Delta \phi=\frac{6 \pi a}{p}
$$

Consider Mercury: $p=55 \times 10^{6} \mathrm{~km}, 2 a_{\odot} \approx 3 \mathrm{~km}, \pi=180^{\circ} \times 3600^{\prime \prime}$ which give $\Delta \phi=\frac{6 \pi a}{p}=$ $0.104^{\prime \prime}$ (per full orbit). In 100 years Mercury fulfills 415 orbits around the Sun, this way we get $\Delta \phi=43^{\prime \prime}$ (per century). For more distant planets (Venus, Earth,...) $\Delta \phi$ is at most $\sim 5^{\prime \prime}$ per century. Already in 1882, Newcomb found a perihelion precession of $43^{\prime \prime}$ per century for Mercury. Full perihelion precession amounts to $575^{\prime \prime}$ per century of which $532^{\prime \prime}$ are due to the influence of other planets (this within Newtonian theory). One finds

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{2-\beta+2 \gamma}{3}=1.003 \pm 0.005 \tag{25.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

in good agreement with general relativity. So far, the parameters of the Robertson expansion are constrained to $|\gamma-1|<3 \times 10^{-4}$ and $|\beta-1|<3 \times 10^{-3}$. More recently (radar echoes delay from Cassini spacecraft): $|\gamma-1|=(2.1 \pm 2.3) \times 10^{-5}{ }^{28}$

[^18]

Figure 17: Illustration of the perihelion precession of Mercury (effect strongly exagerated)

### 25.1 Quadrupole moment of the Sun

A quadrupole moment of the Sun could also influence a perihelion precession of Mercury, that is why one has to study it. The mass quadrupole moment of the Sun (due to its rotation) is

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q=\mathcal{J}_{2} M_{\odot} R_{\odot}^{2} \quad \text { with } \quad \mathcal{J}_{2}=\frac{2}{5} \frac{R_{\|}-R_{\perp}}{R_{\odot}} \tag{25.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

- $R_{\|}$: orthogonal (to $R_{\perp}$ ) radius,
- $R_{\perp}$ : radius orthogonal to the plane containing the planet orbits and parallel to the rotation axis of the Sun.

The induced gravitational potential in the planet's orbital plane (which is also the equatorial plane of the Sun) is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi(r)=-\frac{G M}{r}-\frac{G Q}{2 r^{3}} \tag{25.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

The additional term has the same $r$ dependence than the additional relativistic term:

$$
\begin{equation*}
V_{\mathrm{eff}}=-\frac{G M}{r}+\frac{l^{2}}{2 r^{2}}-\frac{G M l^{2}}{c^{2} r^{3}} \tag{25.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

With $l \sim p v$ and $v^{2} \sim \frac{G M}{p}$ we can compare the two terms (their relative strength)

$$
\frac{G Q}{G M \frac{l^{2}}{c^{2}}} \sim \frac{\mathcal{J}_{2} R_{\odot}^{2}}{p^{2} \frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}} \sim \frac{\mathcal{J}_{2} R_{\odot}^{2}}{p \frac{G M}{c^{2}}} \sim \frac{\mathcal{J}_{2} R_{\odot}^{2}}{p a}
$$

We see that the full expression for the perihelion precession is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \phi=\frac{6 \pi a}{p}\left(\frac{2-\beta+2 \gamma}{3}+\frac{\mathcal{J}_{2} R_{\odot}^{2}}{2 a p}\right) \tag{25.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

From observations one finds $\mathcal{J}_{2} \sim(1-1.7) \times 10^{-7}$; thus the additional term is $\frac{\mathcal{J}_{2} R_{\odot}^{2}}{2 a p} \approx 5 \times 10^{-4}$, accounting for at most $1 / 10$ of the error given in 25.21) and is thus negligible.

## 26 Lie derivative of the metric and Killing vectors

Consider the Lie derivative of the metric tensor $g_{\mu \nu}$ in the direction of the vector $K$. According to equation 14.2 we get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{L}_{K} g_{\mu \nu}=g_{\mu \nu, \kappa} K^{\kappa}+g_{\mu \kappa} K_{, \nu}^{\kappa}+g_{\kappa \nu} K_{, \mu}^{\kappa} . \tag{26.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

To rewrite this expression we observe the identities

$$
\begin{aligned}
K_{\sigma} & =g_{\sigma \mu} K^{\mu} \\
K_{, \nu}^{\kappa} g_{\mu \kappa} & =\frac{\partial K^{\kappa}}{\partial x^{\nu}} g_{\mu \kappa}=\frac{\partial\left(K^{\kappa} g_{\mu \kappa}\right)}{\partial x^{\nu}}-K^{\kappa} \frac{\partial g_{\mu \kappa}}{\partial x^{\nu}}=\frac{\partial K_{\mu}}{\partial x^{\nu}}-K^{\kappa} \frac{\partial g_{\mu \kappa}}{\partial x^{\nu}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence eq. 26.1) can also be written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathcal{L}_{K} g_{\sigma \rho} & =\frac{\partial K_{\sigma}}{\partial x^{\rho}}+\frac{\partial K_{\rho}}{\partial x^{\sigma}}+K^{\mu}\left[\frac{\partial g_{\rho \sigma}}{\partial x^{\mu}}-\frac{\partial g_{\mu \sigma}}{\partial x^{\rho}}-\frac{\partial g_{\rho \mu}}{\partial x^{\sigma}}\right] \\
& =\frac{\partial K_{\sigma}}{\partial x^{\rho}}+\frac{\partial K_{\rho}}{\partial x^{\sigma}}-2 K_{\mu} \Gamma_{\rho \sigma}^{\mu}  \tag{26.2}\\
& =K_{\sigma ; \rho}+K_{\rho ; \sigma} .
\end{align*}
$$

An infinitesimal coordinate transformation is a symmetry of the metric if $\mathcal{L}_{K} g_{\mu \nu}=0$, thus if

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{\sigma ; \rho}+K_{\rho ; \sigma}=0 \tag{26.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Any 4-vector $K_{\sigma}(x)$ satisfying this equation will be said to form a Killing vector. ${ }^{29}$

Example: Consider a stationary gravitational field, for which there exists coordinates $\left\{x^{\mu}\right\}$ such that the components of $g_{\mu \nu}$ do not depend on $c t=x^{0}$ (for instance Schwarzschild metric). Let $K^{\mu}=\delta^{\mu}{ }_{0}$ with the corresponding vector field $\delta^{\mu}{ }_{0} \partial_{\mu}\left(\rightarrow \partial_{0}\right)$. Inserting $K^{\mu}$ into 26.1 one gets $\mathcal{L}_{K} g_{\mu \nu}=g_{\mu \nu, 0}+0+0=$ $\frac{\partial}{\partial x^{0}} g_{\mu \nu}=0$ (since $g_{\mu \nu}$ does not depend on $x^{0}$ ). $K$ is a Killing vector or Killing field or an infinitesimal isometry.

[^19]Notice that, due to the properties of the Lie derivative, if $K_{1}$ and $K_{2}$ are Killing vectors, $\mathcal{L}_{K_{1}} g_{\mu \nu}=0$, $\mathcal{L}_{K_{2}} g_{\mu \nu}=0$ then $\left[K_{1}, K_{2}\right]$ is also a Killing vector since

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\mathcal{L}_{K_{1}}, \mathcal{L}_{K_{2}}\right] g_{\mu \nu}=\mathcal{L}_{\left[K_{1}, K_{2}\right]} g_{\mu \nu}=0 \tag{26.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

We are used to the fact that symmetries lead to conserved quantities: in classical mechanics the angular momentum of a particle moving in a rotationally symmetric field is conserved. In the present context, the concept of "symmetries of a gravitational field" is replaced by "symmetries of the metric" and we therefore expect conserved quantities to be associated with the presence of Killing vectors.

Let $K^{\mu}$ be a Killing vector and $x^{\mu}(\tau)$ be a geodesic. Then the quantity $K_{\mu} \dot{x}^{\mu}$ is constant along the geodesic. Indeed,

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{D}{d \tau}\left(K_{\mu} \dot{x}^{\mu}\right) & =\left(\nabla_{\nu} K_{\mu} \dot{x}^{\nu}\right) \dot{x}^{\mu}+K_{\mu} \underbrace{\left(\nabla_{\nu} \dot{x}^{\mu}\right)}_{=0 \text { geodesic }} \dot{x}^{\nu} \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \underbrace{\left(\nabla_{\nu} K_{\mu}+\nabla_{\mu} K_{\nu}\right)}_{=0} \dot{x}^{\mu} \dot{x}^{\nu}=0 \tag{26.5}
\end{align*}
$$

$T^{\mu \nu}$ is the covariantly conserved symmetric energy-momentum tensor with $\nabla_{\mu} T^{\mu \nu}=0$. Then $J^{\mu}=$ $T^{\mu \nu} K_{\nu}$ is a covariantly conserved current:

$$
\nabla_{\mu} J^{\mu}=\underbrace{\left(\nabla_{\mu} T^{\mu \nu}\right)}_{=0} K_{\nu}+T^{\mu \nu} \nabla_{\mu} K_{\nu}=\frac{1}{2} T^{\mu \nu} \underbrace{\left(\nabla_{\mu} K_{\nu}+\nabla_{\nu} K_{\mu}\right)}_{=0 \widetilde{(26.3})}=0
$$

to which we can associate a conserved charge.

## 27 Maximally symmetric spaces

Maximally symmetric spaces are spaces that admit the maximal number of Killing vectors (which below will turn out to be $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$ for an $n$-dimensional space). In the context of the cosmological principle such spaces, which are simultaneously homogeneous ("the same at every point") and isotropic ("the same in every direction"), provide a description of space in a cosmological space-time.

From equation 17.2 we had (from definition of Riemann tensor and covariant derivative)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\left[\nabla_{X}, \nabla_{Y}\right]-\nabla_{[X, Y]}\right) V^{\lambda}=R_{\sigma \mu \nu}^{\lambda} X^{\mu} Y^{\nu} V^{\sigma} \tag{27.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

along with $X=X^{\mu} \partial_{\mu}, Y=Y^{\nu} \partial_{\nu}$ and $\nabla_{Y^{\nu} \partial_{\nu}} V^{\lambda}=Y^{\nu} \nabla_{\partial_{\nu}} V^{\lambda}=Y^{\nu} \nabla_{\nu} V^{\lambda}, \nabla_{X} \nabla_{Y} V^{\lambda}=X^{\mu} \nabla_{\mu}\left(Y^{\nu} \nabla_{\nu} V^{\lambda}\right)=$ $X^{\mu}\left(\nabla_{\mu} Y^{\nu}\right) \nabla_{\nu} V^{\lambda}+X^{\mu} Y^{\nu} \nabla_{\mu} \nabla_{\nu} V^{\lambda}$ etc, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\nabla_{\mu}, \nabla_{\nu}\right] V^{\lambda}=R_{\sigma \mu \nu}^{\lambda} V^{\sigma} \tag{27.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Taking into account the first Bianchi identity, it is possible to find that for a Killing vector $K_{\mu}$, one has (no proof here)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla_{\lambda} \nabla_{\mu} K_{\nu}(x)=R_{\lambda \mu \nu}^{\rho} K_{\rho}(x) \tag{27.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $x=x_{0}$. Thus a Killing vector $K^{\mu}(x)$ is completely determined everywhere by the values of $K^{\mu}\left(x_{0}\right)$ and $\nabla_{\mu} K_{\nu}\left(x_{0}\right)$ at a single point $x_{0}$ (think of Taylor expansion). A set of Killing vectors $\left\{K_{\mu}^{(i)}(x)\right\}$ is said to be independent if any linear relation of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i} c_{i} K_{\mu}^{(i)}(x)=0 \tag{27.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

with constant coefficients $c_{i}$; implying $c_{i}=0$. Since in an $n$-dimensional space-time there can be at most $n$ linearly independent vectors $K_{\mu}^{(i)}\left(x_{0}\right)$ at a point, and at most $\frac{n(n-1)}{2}$ independent antisymmetric matrices $\left(\nabla_{\mu} K_{\nu}\left(x_{0}\right)\right)$, we reach the conclusion that an $n$-dimensional space-time can have at most

$$
\begin{equation*}
n+\frac{n(n-1)}{2}=\frac{n(n+1)}{2} \tag{27.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

independent Killing vectors.

- Homogeneous space is meaning that the $n$-dimensional space(-time) admits $n$-translational Killing vectors.
- Isotropic space: $\nabla_{\mu} K_{\nu}\left(x_{0}\right)$ is an arbitrary anti-symmetric matrix ( $\rightarrow$ rotation). We can choose a set of $\frac{n(n-1)}{2}$ Killing vectors.
- We define a maximally symmetric space to be a space with a metric with a maximal number of $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$ Killing vectors.

The Riemann curvature tensor of a maximally symmetric space becomes simpler. One can show (no proof) that it becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{i j k l}=k\left(g_{i k} g_{j l}-g_{i l} g_{j k}\right) \tag{27.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some constant $k$. The Ricci tensor then becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{i j}(x)=(n-1) k g_{i j} \tag{27.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Ricci scalar can be obtained to be

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}(x)=n(n-1) k \tag{27.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the Einstein tensor

$$
G_{i k}=R_{i k}-\frac{1}{2} \mathcal{R} g_{i k}=k(n-1)\left(1-\frac{n}{2}\right) g_{i k}
$$

The Bianchi identity implies that $k$ is a constant in order for $G_{i k}{ }^{; k}$ to vanish. We shall deal with space-times in which the metric is spherically symmetric and homogenous on each "plane" of constant time. In our case $n=4$ and the maximally symmetric subspace has 3 dimensions. Consider first the metric on the 3 -dimensional subspace

$$
\mathrm{d} \sigma^{2}=A(r) \mathrm{d} r^{2}+r^{2} \underbrace{\mathrm{~d} \Omega^{2}}_{\mathrm{d} \theta^{2}+\sin ^{2} \theta \mathrm{~d} \phi^{2}}
$$

For the Christoffel symbols, we use the ones for the general form of a static isotropic metric (22.6 with $B(r)=0$. Since the Christoffel symbols are invariant under an overall sign change of the metric, also
the Ricci tensor is and thus one can apply 22.10 - 22.13 with $B(r)=0$ for this three-dimensional space, without caring for the sign in front of $A$. Hence we get for equation 27.7

$$
\begin{align*}
& R_{r r}=R_{11}=\frac{A^{\prime}}{r A} \\
& R_{\theta \theta}=R_{22}=-\frac{1}{A}+1+\frac{r A^{\prime}}{2 A^{2}} \tag{27.9}
\end{align*}
$$

From eq. 27.7), we have $R_{r r}=2 k A$, and $R_{\theta \theta}=2 k g_{\theta \theta}=2 k r^{2}$. Thus from equating the two first equation leads us to

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 k A=\frac{A^{\prime}}{r A} \Rightarrow A^{\prime}=2 k r A^{2} \tag{27.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

while we get for the second one

$$
2 k r^{2}=-\frac{1}{A}+1+\frac{r A^{\prime}}{2 A^{2}}=-\frac{1}{A}+1+\frac{2 k r^{2} A^{2}}{2 A^{2}}=-\frac{1}{A}+1+k r^{2} \Rightarrow k r^{2}=-\frac{1}{A}+1
$$

which leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
A=\frac{1}{1-k r^{2}} \tag{27.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

and solves also 27.10 . Then the metric on the 3 -dimensional subspace (maximally symmetric) is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} \sigma^{2}=\frac{\mathrm{d} r^{2}}{1-k r^{2}}+r^{2} \mathrm{~d} \Omega^{2} \tag{27.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

It can be shown that $k$ can have the following values: $0, \pm 1$.

$$
k= \begin{cases}+1 & \text { sphere, positive curvature } \\ -1 & \text { hyperbola, negative curvature } \\ 0 & \text { plane, zero curvature }\end{cases}
$$

The full metric (with time coordinate) has then the form:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=c^{2} \mathrm{~d} t^{2}-a^{2}(t)\left\{\frac{\mathrm{d} r^{2}}{1-k r^{2}}+r^{2}\left(\mathrm{~d} \theta^{2}+\sin ^{2} \theta \mathrm{~d} \phi^{2}\right)\right\} \tag{27.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $a(t)$ is the cosmic scale factor, which has to be determined by solving the Einstein's equations via the matter content of the universe. This metric (first discovered by Friedmann, Lemaître, Roberston and Walker) is a reasonable ansatz for describing the universe. There is good evidence that the universe (on large scales) is surprisingly homogeneous and isotropic (from redshift surveys of galaxies and cosmic microwave background radiation).

## 28 Friedmann equations

We write the metric 27.13 as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d} s^{2}=c^{2} \mathrm{~d} t^{2}-a^{2}(t) \tilde{g}_{i j} \mathrm{~d} x^{i} \mathrm{~d} x^{j}, \tag{28.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where tildes denote 3 -dimensional quantities calculated with the metric $\tilde{g}_{i j}$. The Christoffel symbols are given by (notice $\Gamma_{00}^{\mu}=0$ ):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma_{j k}^{i}=\tilde{\Gamma}_{j k}^{i}, \quad \Gamma_{j 0}^{i}=\frac{\dot{a}}{a} \delta^{i}{ }_{j}, \quad \Gamma_{i j}^{0}=\dot{a} a \tilde{g}_{i j}, \tag{28.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where dot denotes derivation with respect to $t$. The relevant components of the Riemann tensor are:

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{0 j 0}^{i}=-\frac{\ddot{a}}{a} \delta^{i}{ }_{j}, \quad R_{i 0 j}^{0}=a \ddot{a} \tilde{g}_{i j}, \quad R_{i k j}^{k}=\tilde{R}_{i j}+2 \dot{a}^{2} \tilde{g}_{i j} \tag{28.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can make use of $\tilde{R}_{i j}=2 k \tilde{g}_{i j}$ (maximal symmetry of the 3 -dimensional subspace) to compute $R_{\mu \nu}$. The non-zero components are then

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{00}=-3 \frac{\ddot{a}}{a}, \quad R_{i j}=\left(a \ddot{a}+2 \dot{a}^{2}+2 k\right) \tilde{g}_{i j}=-\left(\frac{\ddot{a}}{a}+2 \frac{\dot{a}^{2}}{a^{2}}+2 \frac{k}{a^{2}}\right) g_{i j}, \tag{28.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $g_{i j}=-a^{2} \tilde{g}_{i j}$. The Ricci scalar becomes $\mathcal{R}=-\frac{6}{a^{2}}\left(a \ddot{a}+\dot{a}^{2}+k\right)$ and the non-zero components of the Einstein tensor are

$$
\begin{equation*}
G_{00}=3\left(\frac{\dot{a}^{2}}{a^{2}}+\frac{k}{a^{2}}\right), \quad G_{0 i}=0, \quad G_{i j}=\left(2 \frac{\ddot{a}}{a}+\frac{\dot{a}^{2}}{a^{2}}+\frac{k}{a^{2}}\right) g_{i j} \tag{28.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next we have to specify the matter content. We treat here the universe as non-interacting particles or a perfect fluid. A perfect fluid has energy-momentum tensor 19.8)

$$
\begin{equation*}
T^{\mu \nu}=\left(\frac{p}{c^{2}}+\rho\right) u^{\mu} u^{\nu}-g^{\mu \nu} p \tag{28.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $p$ is the pressure, $\rho$ the energy density and $u^{\mu}$ the velocity field of the fluid ( $u^{\mu}=(c, 0,0,0)$ in a comoving coordinate system). The trace of the energy-momentum tensor is then

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{\mu}^{\mu}=\rho c^{2}-3 p \tag{28.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The equation of state is $p=p(\rho)$ and in particular one assumes

$$
\begin{equation*}
p=w \rho \tag{28.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $w$ is the equation of state parameter.

## Examples:

- For non-interacting particles we have $p=0, w=0$. Such matter is referred to as dust. The energy-momentum tensor is $T^{\mu \nu}=\rho u^{\mu} u^{\nu}$.
- For radiation the energy-momentum tensor is (like in Maxwell's theory) traceless and hence radiation has the equation of state

$$
\begin{equation*}
p=\frac{1}{3} \rho, \tag{28.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

thus $w=\frac{1}{3}$.

- As we will see, a cosmological constant $\Lambda$ corresponds to a "matter" contribution with $w=-1$.

The conservation law $T^{\nu \mu}{ }_{; \mu}=0$ implies $T_{; \mu}^{0 \mu}=0$ or $\partial_{\mu} T^{\mu 0}+\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{\mu} T^{\nu 0}+\Gamma_{\mu \nu}^{0} T^{\mu \nu}=0$. For a perfect fluid: $\partial_{t} \rho(t)+\Gamma_{\mu 0}^{\mu} \rho+\Gamma_{00}^{0} \rho+\Gamma_{i j}^{0} T^{i j}=0$ (with $i, j=1,2,3$ ). Inserting the expressions for the Christoffel symbols 28.2 we get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\rho}=-3(\rho+p) \frac{\dot{a}}{a} . \tag{28.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

For dust ( $p=0$ ):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\dot{\rho}}{\rho}=-3 \frac{\dot{a}}{a} \tag{28.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integration gives $\rho a^{3}=$ constant or $\rho \propto a^{-3}$. For a radiation dominated universe we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
p=\frac{\rho}{3} \Rightarrow \frac{\dot{\rho}}{\rho}=-4 \frac{\dot{a}}{a} . \tag{28.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integration gives $\rho a^{4}=$ constant or $\rho \propto a^{-4}$. More generally for 28.8) one gets:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho a(t)^{3(1+w)}=\text { constant } . \tag{28.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Einstein equations with $\Lambda$ (equation 20.10) are

$$
G_{\mu \nu}=\frac{8 \pi G}{c^{4}} T_{\mu \nu}+\Lambda g_{\mu \nu}
$$

Using 19.8 and that $u^{\mu}=(c, 0,0,0)$ in a comoving coordinate system, let us write down the 00 component and the $i j$-component of this equation:

$$
\begin{align*}
3\left(\frac{\dot{a}^{2}}{a^{2}}+\frac{k}{a^{2}}\right) & =8 \pi G \rho+\Lambda,  \tag{28.14}\\
\left(2 \frac{\ddot{a}}{a}+\frac{\dot{a}^{2}}{a^{2}}+\frac{k}{a^{2}}\right) g_{i j} & =(-8 \pi G p+\Lambda) g_{i j} . \tag{28.15}
\end{align*}
$$

One has in addition equation 28.10 from the conservation law. Using the first equation to eliminate $\frac{\dot{d}^{2}}{a^{2}}+\frac{k}{a^{2}}$ from the second one, one obtains the Friedmann equations:

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\dot{a}^{2}}{a^{2}}+\frac{k}{a^{2}} & =\frac{8 \pi G}{3} \rho+\frac{\Lambda}{3}  \tag{28.16}\\
-3 \frac{\ddot{a}}{a} & =4 \pi G(\rho+3 p)-\Lambda  \tag{28.17}\\
\dot{\rho} & =-3(\rho+p) \frac{\dot{a}}{a} \tag{28.18}
\end{align*}
$$

Notice that one could also use the form (20.8) of the Einstein equations to derive the above equations. Introducing the Hubble parameter: $H(t)=\frac{\dot{a}(t)}{a(t)}$ and the deceleration parameter: $q(t)=-\frac{a(t) \ddot{a}(t)}{\dot{a}^{2}(t)}$, with their present day values denoted by $H_{0}=H\left(t_{0}\right)$ and $q_{0}=q\left(t_{0}\right)$, where $t_{0}$ is the age of the universe;
we get instead

$$
\begin{align*}
H^{2} & =\frac{8 \pi G}{3} \rho-\frac{k}{a^{2}}+\frac{\Lambda}{3} \\
q & =\frac{1}{3 H^{2}}(4 \pi G(\rho+3 p)-\Lambda)  \tag{28.19}\\
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left(\rho a^{3}\right) & =-3 H p a^{3}
\end{align*}
$$

In the case of $\Lambda=0$, we define a critical density $\rho_{\text {crit }}=\frac{3 H^{2}}{8 \pi G}$ and a density parameter $\Omega=\frac{\rho}{\rho_{\text {crit }}}$. Then

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
\rho<\rho_{\text {crit }} \Leftrightarrow k=-1 & \\
& \text { open universe } \\
\rho=\rho_{\text {crit }} & \Leftrightarrow k=0 \\
& \\
\text { flat universe } \\
\rho>\rho_{\text {crit }} & \Leftrightarrow k=+1
\end{array} \quad\right. \text { close universe }
$$

Let us now assume that the density is a combination of dust (that we shall simply denote as "matter") and radiation: $\rho=\rho_{m}+\rho_{r}$. Moreover, we assume that $\rho_{m} \sim a^{-3}$ and $\rho_{r} \sim a^{-4}$. This is valid if radiation and matter are decoupled, or if one density is much bigger that the other one (notice that in today's universe $\rho_{m} \gg \rho_{r}$ ). Let us introduce the constants $K_{m}=\frac{8 \pi G}{3} \rho_{m} a^{3}$ and $K_{r}=\frac{8 \pi G}{3} \rho_{r} a^{4}$. Inserting them into equation 28.16 leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{a}^{2}-\frac{K_{r}}{a^{2}}-\frac{K_{m}}{a}-\frac{1}{3} \Lambda a^{2}=-k \tag{28.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

This equation reads as

$$
\dot{a}^{2}+V(a)=-k,
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
V(a)=-\frac{K_{r}}{a^{2}}-\frac{K_{m}}{a}-\frac{1}{3} \Lambda a^{2} \tag{28.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

plays the role of an effective potential, see figure 18
Consider the solution for $a \rightarrow 0$ : in that case the terms $\frac{K_{r}}{a^{2}}$ and $\frac{K_{m}}{a}$ dominate and the behavior does not depend neither on $k$ nor on $\Lambda$.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\dot{a}^{2} \approx \frac{K_{r}}{a^{2}} & \rightarrow \quad a(t) \sim \sqrt{t} \\
\dot{a}^{2} \approx \frac{K_{m}}{a} & \rightarrow \quad a(t) \sim t^{\frac{2}{3}} \tag{28.23}
\end{array}
$$

For $a \rightarrow 0, \dot{a}$ goes to $\infty$. If $K_{r} \neq 0$, then for $a \rightarrow 0 a \sim \sqrt{t}$. From figure 18 we can discriminate different types of solutions:

1. For $\Lambda<0$, there is for all $k$-values a maximal $a_{\max }$. Thus there will be a periodic solution going between $a=0$ and $a_{\text {max }}$.
2. $\Lambda=0$ (Einstein-de Sitter universe): for $k=1$ there is a bounded solution as in the case 1 . For $k=0$ the expansion velocity goes towards 0 , instead for $k=-1$ it goes towards a constant value.
3. For $\Lambda>0$ there are several cases:
a) $\Lambda=\Lambda_{\text {crit }}$ and $k=1$. The value of $\Lambda_{\text {crit }}$ is obtained for the horizontal line $-k$ (figure 18 ) just going through the maximum of the potential. Assuming $K_{r} \approx 0$ (as in today's universe) we get with $\dot{a}=0, V=-1 \rightarrow \frac{d V}{d a}=0$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Lambda=\Lambda_{c r i t}=\frac{4}{9 K_{m}^{2}} \quad \text { and } \quad a=a_{\text {stat }}=\frac{3 K_{m}}{2} \tag{28.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

This corresponds to the static Einstein solution. Einstein introduced a cosmological constant in order to get such a static solution, which is however unstable. Small perturbations lead either to a contraction or to an exponential growth.
b) $\Lambda<\Lambda_{\text {crit }}$ and $k=1$. The horizontal line $-k$ intercepts the curve $V(a)$ in two points $a_{1}$ and $a_{2}$. We obtain either a periodic solution between 0 and $a_{1}$ or an unbounded solution with $a>a_{2}$.
c) $\Lambda=\Lambda_{\text {crit }}(1+\epsilon)$ and $k=1$. For $0<\epsilon \ll 1$ the horizontal line $-k$ lies just above the maximum value of $V(a)$. Thus the expansion velocity $\dot{a}$ will be very low in this region (Lemaître universe).
d) $\Lambda>\Lambda_{\text {crit }}$ and $k=1$. The line $-k$ does not intercept the $V(a)$ curve. Around the maximum of $V(a)$ the expansion is lowered.
e) $\Lambda>0$ and $k=-1,0$ : as in the previous case, but there may be less deceleration in the region of the maximum of $V(a)$.


Figure 18: Sketch of the "effective potential" $V(a)$ for different values of $\Lambda$.

For $\Lambda>0$, all solutions are unbounded. In the limit $a \rightarrow \infty, V(a)$ is dominated by the $\Lambda$-term:

$$
\dot{a}^{2} \approx \frac{\Lambda}{3} a^{2}
$$

thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
a(t) \sim \exp \left(\sqrt{\frac{\Lambda}{3}} t\right) \tag{28.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

The expansion is exponentially accelerated.
According to the currently most accepted model (so-called $\Lambda C D M$-model), the main contributions to the density are

- ordinary matter (baryons) $\Omega_{\text {baryons }} \sim 0.05$
- dark matter $\Omega_{\mathrm{DM}} \sim 0.27$
- cosmological constant $\Omega_{\Lambda}=\frac{\rho_{\Lambda}}{\rho_{\text {crit }}} \sim 0.68$ with $\rho_{\Lambda}=\frac{\Lambda}{8 \pi G}$ (also called dark energy).

Moreover, the universe seems to be almost flat: $k \approx 0$. These cosmological parameters would thus correspond to the case 3e) of the previous discussion.

Finally, $H_{0}^{-1}$ is related to the age of the universe. $H_{0} \sim 67.4 \pm 0.5 \frac{\mathrm{~km}}{\mathrm{sec} / \mathrm{Mpc}}$ gives an age of $\sim 13.8$ billion years ${ }^{30}$

## 29 Gravitational waves

On 14 September 2015 the two LIGO detectors simultaneously observed a transient gravitational wave (GW) signal, which has been interpreted as due to the merger of two black holes with masses of about $36 M_{\odot}$ and $29 M_{\odot}$, respectively. This being the first direct detection of GW was announced 11 February $2016^{31}$ and led to the 2017 Nobel prize in physics for Rainer Weiss, Kip Thorne and Barry Barish for "decisive contributions to the LIGO detector and the observation of gravitational waves 3 In the data of the first and second Advanced LIGO observing run 11 GW events have been found, 10 binary black hole mergers as well as a coalescence of two neutron stars ${ }^{33}$,

Moreover, the satellite LISA Pathfinder, with the aim to test the technology needed to build LISA, a GW detector in space, was successfully launched on 3 December 2015. On 7 June 2016 the first results which showed that the performance of LISA Pathfinder was much better than expected and almost already at the level of the LISA requirements were released $\sqrt[34]{4}$ Thus the year 2016, 100 years after Einstein's first paper on GW as a consequence of his theory of General Relativity, has thus seen dramatic advancements in the field of GW.

[^20]
### 29.1 Linearized Field Equations

In order to find solutions to the Einstein field equations in the weak field regime, one can linearize the equations. The results of this section will be used to describe gravitational waves.

The field itself is a form of energy and thus also a source of the field. This effect is purely due to the non-linearities, of course. Considering a weak field, we can work with small deviations from the Minkowski metric:

$$
\begin{equation*}
g_{\mu \nu}=\eta_{\mu \nu}+h_{\mu \nu} \quad \text { with }\left|h_{\mu \nu}\right| \ll 1 . \tag{29.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

One proceeds as follows. First, $G_{\mu \nu}$ has to be expanded in powers of $h_{\mu \nu}$. The first order terms will lead to a linear wave equation. Neglecting terms of third order, the second order terms give the energy-momentum tensor of the gravitational field.

The expansion of the Ricci tensor can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mu \nu}=R_{\mu \nu}^{(1)}+R_{\mu \nu}^{(2)}+\ldots \tag{29.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $R_{\mu \nu}^{(0)}=0$. In order to compute the first order term of 29.2 , we write down the expansion of the curvature tensor: ${ }^{35}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\rho \mu \sigma \nu}=\frac{1}{2}\left(g_{\rho \sigma, \mu, \nu}+g_{\mu \nu, \rho, \sigma}-g_{\mu \sigma, \nu, \rho}-g_{\rho \nu, \sigma, \mu}\right)+\mathcal{O}\left(h^{2}\right) \tag{29.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the derivatives are non-covariant (the additional terms due to covariant derivatives are of higher order). We can thus write the first order Ricci tensor in terms of $h_{\mu \nu}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mu \nu}^{(1)}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\square h_{\mu \nu}+h_{\rho, \mu, \nu}^{\rho}-h_{\mu, \rho, \nu}^{\rho}-h_{\nu, \rho, \mu}^{\rho}\right) . \tag{29.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

The d'Alembert operator can be used instead of $\partial_{\mu} \partial^{\mu}$ because in the approximation 29.1 the coordinates are "almost" Minkowskian, so $\partial_{\mu} \partial^{\mu}=\square+\mathcal{O}(h)$. The first order Ricci scalar is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
R^{(1)}=\eta^{\lambda \rho} R_{\lambda \rho}^{(1)} \tag{29.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

We proceed by considering the second order equations. The left-hand side of the field equations can be written in terms of the quantity $t_{\mu \nu}$ which is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mu \nu}^{(2)}-\left(\frac{R g_{\mu \nu}}{2}\right)^{(2)}=: \frac{8 \pi G}{c^{4}} t_{\mu \nu} \tag{29.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

We take these terms to the right-hand side of Einstein's equations and find at second order in $h_{\mu \nu}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mu \nu}^{(1)}-\frac{R^{(1)}}{2} \eta_{\mu \nu}=-\frac{8 \pi G}{c^{4}}\left(T_{\mu \nu}+t_{\mu \nu}\right) \tag{29.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

This can be interpreted as a wave equation linear in $h_{\mu \nu}$ with source terms

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau_{\mu \nu}=T_{\mu \nu}+t_{\mu \nu} \tag{29.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^21]We have to think of $\tau_{\mu \nu}$ as being the energy-momentum tensor which also includes the contribution of the gravitational field itself.

We interpret 29.7 as follows: since $G^{\mu \nu}{ }_{; \nu}=0$ (Bianchi identity), we find for the left-hand side of 29.7):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{\nu}}\left(R_{\mu \nu}^{(1)}-\frac{R^{(1)}}{2} \eta_{\mu \nu}\right)=0 \tag{29.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore the right-hand side satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \tau_{\mu \nu}}{\partial x_{\nu}}=0 \tag{29.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

This gives the momentum

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{\mu}=\int d^{3} r \tau_{\mu 0}=\text { const. } \tag{29.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is conserved (in time). We can thus interpret $\tau_{\mu 0}$ as the momentum density and $\tau_{\mu \nu}$ as an energymomentum tensor (indeed we know that $T^{\mu \nu}{ }_{; \nu}=0$ but so far we did not necessarily conclude $\tau^{\mu \nu}{ }_{; \nu}=$ 0 ). Since $T_{\mu \nu}$ includes all non-gravitational sources and $\tau_{\mu \nu}$ is interpreted as the "complete" energymomentum tensor, $t_{\mu \nu}$ clearly describes energy-momentum which is purely due to the gravitational field:

$$
\begin{equation*}
t_{\mu \nu}^{\text {grav. }}=\frac{c^{4}}{8 \pi G}\left(R_{\mu \nu}^{(2)}-\left(\frac{R g_{\mu \nu}}{2}\right)^{(2)}\right) \quad\left(\left|h_{\mu \nu}\right| \ll 1\right) \tag{29.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

We now turn back to the first order in $h_{\mu \nu}$ and write down the field equations using Eq. (29.4) at first order:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square h_{\mu \nu}+h_{\rho, \mu, \nu}^{\rho}-h_{\mu, \rho, \nu}^{\rho}-h_{\nu, \rho, \mu}^{\rho}=-\frac{16 \pi G}{c^{4}}\left(T_{\mu \nu}-\frac{T}{2} \eta_{\mu \nu}\right) . \tag{29.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

We use $\eta_{\mu \nu}$ instead of $g_{\mu \nu}$ in this equation because both sides are already of order $h$. Since the field equations are covariant, we are free to perform a coordinate transformation. But note that since $\left|h_{\mu \nu}\right| \ll 1$ we can only perform coordinate transformations which deviate only slightly from Minkowski coordinates:

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{\mu} \longrightarrow x^{\prime \mu}=x^{\mu}+\varepsilon^{\mu}(x) \quad \text { with } \varepsilon \ll 1 . \tag{29.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

From $g^{\prime \mu \nu}=\frac{\partial x^{\prime \mu}}{\partial x^{\lambda}} \frac{\partial x^{\prime \nu}}{\partial x^{\rho}} g^{\lambda \rho}$ we infer how $h_{\mu \nu}$ transforms. With $\frac{\partial x^{\prime \mu}}{\partial x^{\lambda}}=\delta_{\lambda}^{\mu}+\frac{\partial \varepsilon^{\mu}}{\partial x^{\lambda}}$ inserted into $g^{\prime \mu \nu}$ we get

$$
\begin{align*}
g^{\prime \mu \nu} & =\eta^{\mu \nu}-h^{\prime \mu \nu} \\
& =\left(\delta_{\lambda}^{\mu}+\frac{\partial \varepsilon^{\mu}}{\partial x^{\lambda}}\right)\left(\delta_{\rho}^{\nu}+\frac{\partial \varepsilon^{\nu}}{\partial x^{\rho}}\right)\left(\eta^{\lambda \rho}-h^{\lambda \rho}\right) \tag{29.15}
\end{align*}
$$

where we used that from $g_{\mu \nu}=\eta_{\mu \nu}+h_{\mu \nu}$ it follows $g^{\mu \nu}=\eta^{\mu \nu}-h^{\mu \nu}$. From Eq. 29.15 we infer

$$
\begin{equation*}
h^{\prime \mu \nu}=h^{\mu \nu}-\frac{\partial \varepsilon^{\mu}}{\partial x_{\nu}}-\frac{\partial \varepsilon^{\nu}}{\partial x_{\mu}} . \tag{29.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since this is already a first order equation (in $h$ ), we can raise and lower indices with $g_{\mu \nu} \simeq \eta_{\mu \nu}$ and $g^{\mu \nu} \simeq \eta^{\mu \nu}$. Thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{\mu \nu}^{\prime}=h_{\mu \nu}-\frac{\partial \varepsilon_{\mu}}{\partial x^{\nu}}-\frac{\partial \varepsilon_{\nu}}{\partial x^{\mu}} . \tag{29.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

In analogy to electrodynamics this transformation of the "potentials" $g_{\mu \nu}$ is called a gauge transformation. We can choose four functions $\varepsilon^{\mu}(x)$ which give four constraints on the "potentials" $h_{\mu \nu}$. For instance,

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 h_{\nu, \mu}^{\mu}=h^{\mu}{ }_{\mu, \nu} . \tag{29.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

We insert the gauge condition 29.18 into 29.13 and obtain the decoupled linearized field equations:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square h_{\mu \nu}=-\frac{16 \pi G}{c^{4}}\left(T_{\mu \nu}-\frac{T}{2} \eta_{\mu \nu}\right) \text {. } \tag{29.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

This can easily be seen if we differentiate 29.18 (i.e. $h^{\rho}{ }_{\rho, \mu}=2 h^{\rho}{ }_{\mu, \rho}$ ) with respect to $x^{\nu}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{\rho, \mu, \nu}^{\rho}=2 h_{\mu, \rho, \nu}^{\rho}=h_{\mu, \rho, \nu}^{\rho}+h_{\nu, \rho, \mu}^{\rho} \tag{29.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

(we used $h_{\mu \nu}=h_{\nu \mu}$ ). This implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
-h_{\mu, \rho, \nu}^{\rho}-h_{\nu, \rho, \mu}^{\rho}+h_{\rho, \mu, \nu}^{\rho}=0 \tag{29.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is just another form of our gauge condition from which it can be seen that 29.13 indeed reduces to 29.19.

Furthermore, it can be shown that from (29.17) it follows that if $h_{\mu \nu}$ does not satisfy 29.18, then we can find a transformed $h_{\mu \nu}^{\prime}$ that does so. This can be done using the coordinate transformation (29.14 with $\square \varepsilon_{\nu}=h^{\mu}{ }_{\nu, \mu}-\frac{1}{2} h^{\mu}{ }_{\mu, \nu}$.

The linearized field equation Eq. 29.19 has the same structure as the field equations in electrodynamics. We can therefore immediately write down the well-known solution for the retarded potentials:

$$
\begin{align*}
h_{\mu \nu}(\vec{r}, t) & =-\frac{4 G}{c^{4}} \int d^{3} r^{\prime} \frac{S_{\mu \nu}\left(\vec{r}^{\prime}, t-\frac{\left|\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right|}{c}\right)}{\left|\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right|}  \tag{29.22}\\
\text { with } \quad S_{\mu \nu} & =T_{\mu \nu}-\frac{T}{2} \eta_{\mu \nu}
\end{align*}
$$

The interpretation is the same as in electrodynamics: a change in $S_{\mu \nu}$ at position $\vec{r}^{\prime}$ does not affect the position $\vec{r}$ before some time $\frac{\left|\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right|}{c}$ has passed.

For weak gravitational fields (i.e. $\left|h_{\mu \nu}\right|=\left|g_{\mu \nu}-\eta_{\mu \nu}\right| \ll 1$ ) the Einstein field equations read

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square h_{\mu \nu}=-\frac{16 \pi G}{c^{4}}\left(T_{\mu \nu}-\frac{T}{2} \eta_{\mu \nu}\right) . \tag{29.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the vacuum $\left(T_{\mu \nu}=0\right)$ the equation reduces to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square h_{\mu \nu}=0 \tag{29.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

which has plane waves as its simplest solution. The above equation is quite similar to the wave equation in electromagnetism, $\square A^{\mu}=0$ with the electromagnetic vector potential $A^{\mu}$. As we will see, the solutions are similar, as well. Note that the wave equation in electromagnetism is exact whereas the general relativistic wave equation arises from the approximate linearized field equations.

### 29.2 Electromagnetic Waves

Physical fields are invariant under gauge transformations

$$
\begin{equation*}
A^{\mu} \rightarrow A^{\mu}=A^{\mu}+\partial^{\mu} \chi \tag{29.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that we can choose $\partial_{\mu} A^{\mu}=0$ (Lorenz gauge) and get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square A^{\mu}=\frac{4 \pi}{c} j^{\mu} . \tag{29.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

Due to the gauge conditions, only three out of four components of $A^{\mu}$ are independent. While leaving the Lorenz gauge unaltered, we still have the freedom to perform an additional gauge transformation satisfying $\square \chi=0$. Since in vacuum $j^{\mu}=0$, this allows us to set $A^{0}=0$. Finally we are left with two degrees of freedom (polarizations). The conditions read then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square A^{\mu}=0, \quad A^{0}=0, \quad \partial_{i} A^{i}=0 \tag{29.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is solved by the ansatz

$$
\begin{equation*}
A^{\mu}=e^{\mu} \exp \left[-i k_{\nu} x^{\nu}\right]+\text { c.c. }, \tag{29.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $k_{\mu} k^{\mu}=0$ and $e_{i} k^{i}=0$ (polarizations are transverse to propagation direction).

### 29.3 The Case of Gravity

Due to the symmetry $h_{\mu \nu}=h_{\nu \mu}, 10$ out of 16 components of $h_{\mu \nu}$ are independent. With a gauge transformation of the form 29.18 we can impose four additional conditions. This leaves us with 6 degrees of freedom that are truly independent. If we consider the vacuum case

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square h_{\mu \nu}=0, \tag{29.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

in addition to 29.17 we can perform a further transformation of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{\mu \nu} \rightarrow h_{\mu \nu}^{\prime}=h_{\mu \nu}-\partial_{\mu} \varepsilon_{\nu}-\partial_{\nu} \varepsilon_{\mu} \tag{29.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

provided that $\varepsilon_{\mu}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square \varepsilon_{\mu}=0 \tag{29.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

Such a transformation leaves Eq. 29.29) and the gauge condition 29.18) invariant (this is in complete analogy to electromagnetism, of course). With these four additional conditions we are left with two independent components of $h_{\mu \nu}$. The solution to 29.29 can be written in terms of plane waves

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{\mu \nu}=e_{\mu \nu} \exp \left[-i k_{\kappa} x^{\kappa}\right]+\text { c.c. } \tag{29.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\eta^{\lambda \nu} k_{\lambda} k_{\nu}=k^{\nu} k_{\nu}=0 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad k_{0}^{2}=\frac{\omega^{2}}{c^{2}}=\vec{k}^{2}=k^{2} . \tag{29.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

The amplitude of the wave $e_{\mu \nu}$ is called polarization tensor. Inserting 29.32 into the gauge condition 29.18 ( $2 h^{\mu}{ }_{\nu, \mu}=h^{\mu}{ }_{\mu, \nu}$ ) leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 k_{\mu} \eta^{\mu \rho} e_{\rho \nu}=k_{\nu} \eta^{\mu \rho} e_{\rho \mu} \tag{29.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

Clearly $e_{\mu \nu}$ inherits the symmetry of $h_{\mu \nu}$, thus $e_{\mu \nu}=e_{\nu \mu}$. Let us choose a wave travelling along the $x^{3}$-axis. This yields the wave solution

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{\mu \nu}=e_{\mu \nu} \exp \left[i k\left(x^{3}-c t\right)\right] \tag{29.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

where we used Eq. 29.33). The components of the wave vector are then

$$
\begin{equation*}
k_{1}=k_{2}=0, \quad k_{0}=-k_{3}=k=\frac{\omega}{c} . \tag{29.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this case the gauge condition 29.34 reads

$$
\begin{align*}
& e_{00}+e_{30}=\frac{1}{2}\left(e_{00}-e_{11}-e_{22}-e_{33}\right)  \tag{29.37}\\
& e_{01}+e_{31}=0  \tag{29.38}\\
& e_{02}+e_{32}=0  \tag{29.39}\\
& e_{03}+e_{33}=-\frac{1}{2}\left(e_{00}-e_{11}-e_{22}-e_{33}\right) . \tag{29.40}
\end{align*}
$$

With $e_{\mu \nu}=e_{\nu \mu}$ and these four conditions, the polarization tensor is fully determined by six components. All the other components can be expressed in terms of the six independent components

$$
\begin{equation*}
e_{00}, e_{11}, e_{33}, e_{12}, e_{13} \text { and } e_{23} \tag{29.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

The other components are given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
e_{01}=-e_{31}=-e_{13}, \quad e_{02}=-e_{32}, \quad e_{22}=-e_{11}, \quad e_{03}=-\frac{1}{2}\left(e_{00}+e_{33}\right) \tag{29.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can perform yet another transformation 29.14 $\left(x^{\prime \mu}=x^{\mu}+\varepsilon^{\mu}\right)$ with functions $\varepsilon^{\mu}$ satisfying $\square \varepsilon^{\mu}=0$. The functions are solutions of the wave equation, therefore we can write them as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varepsilon^{\mu}(x)=\delta^{\mu} \exp \left[-i k_{\mu} x^{\mu}\right]+\text { c.c.. } \tag{29.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

As noted before, such a transformation with arbitrary $\delta^{\mu}$ does not violate the gauge condition (29.18). We choose $k^{\mu}$ in 29.43 equal to the wave vector of a given gravitational wave. Using 29.43 in 29.16) we obtain a new solution $h_{\mu \nu}^{\prime}$ in which all the terms have the same exponential dependence of
$\exp \left[-i k_{\mu} x^{\mu}\right]$. Thus only the amplitudes transform as

$$
\begin{align*}
& e_{11}^{\prime}=e_{11},  \tag{29.44}\\
& e_{12}^{\prime}=e_{12},  \tag{29.45}\\
& e_{13}^{\prime}=e_{13}-i \delta_{1} k,  \tag{29.46}\\
& e_{23}^{\prime}=e_{23}-i \delta_{2} k,  \tag{29.47}\\
& e_{33}^{\prime}=e_{33}-2 i \delta_{3} k,  \tag{29.48}\\
& e_{00}^{\prime}=e_{00}+2 i k \delta_{0} . \tag{29.49}
\end{align*}
$$

We can choose $\delta_{\mu}$ such that $e_{00}^{\prime}=e_{13}^{\prime}=e_{33}^{\prime}=e_{23}^{\prime}=0$. This new solution is equivalent to the old one. From the physical point of view, only polarizations corresponding to $e_{11}^{\prime}$ and $e_{12}^{\prime}$ are relevant.

Neglecting primes in our notation from now on, we get for the gravitational wave propagating in $x^{3}$-direction, after gauging away all redundancies

$$
h_{\mu \nu}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0  \tag{29.50}\\
0 & e_{11} & e_{12} & 0 \\
0 & e_{12} & -e_{11} & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right) \cdot \exp \left[i k\left(x^{3}-c t\right)\right]+\text { c.c. }
$$

The direction of $\vec{k}$ is the $x^{3}$-axis. We ask now the question how 29.50 transforms under a rotation around this axis. Since we are in an almost Minkowskian metric we can realize this transformation as a Lorentz transformation described by the matrix

$$
\bar{\Lambda}^{\mu}{ }_{\nu}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0  \tag{29.51}\\
0 & \cos \varphi & \sin \varphi & 0 \\
0 & -\sin \varphi & \cos \varphi & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Therefore the polarization tensor transforms as

$$
\begin{equation*}
e_{\mu \nu}^{\prime}=\bar{\Lambda}^{\rho}{ }_{\mu} \bar{\Lambda}^{\sigma}{ }_{\nu} e_{\rho \sigma} . \tag{29.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

This yields

$$
\begin{align*}
& e_{11}^{\prime}=e_{11} \cos (2 \varphi)+e_{12} \sin (2 \varphi),  \tag{29.53}\\
& e_{12}^{\prime}=-e_{11} \sin (2 \varphi)+e_{12} \cos (2 \varphi) \tag{29.54}
\end{align*}
$$

If we consider $e_{ \pm} \equiv e_{11} \pm i e_{12}$ instead, we thus have

$$
\begin{equation*}
e_{ \pm}^{\prime}=e^{ \pm 2 i \varphi} e_{ \pm} \tag{29.55}
\end{equation*}
$$

The vectors $e_{ \pm}$have helicity $\pm 2$, whereas the wave solutions in electrodynamics have helicity $\pm 1$. Generalizing from the electromagnetic field, which is quantized using a spin 1 particle, the photon,
one can thus expect the quanta of the gravitational field to be spin 2 particles. While there is neither evidence for their existence nor a closed theory of quantum gravity, the hypothetical quanta of the gravitational field are commonly dubbed gravitons .

### 29.4 Quadrupole Radiation

Oscillating charge distributions emit electromagnetic waves. In analogy we expect oscillating mass distributions to emit gravitational waves. We quickly repeat the case of electromagnetic dipole radiation before turning to the case of oscillating mass distributions.

In electromagnetism one finds that an oscillating dipole moment

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{p}(t)=\overrightarrow{p_{0}} \exp (-i \omega t)+\text { c.c. } \tag{29.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

emits electromagnetic waves whose power $P$ per solid angle is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d P}{d \Omega}=\frac{\omega^{4}}{8 \pi c^{3}}|\vec{p}|^{2} \sin ^{2} \theta \tag{29.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\theta$ is the angle between $\vec{p}$ and $\vec{k}$ where $\vec{k}$ is the direction of propagation. The total emitted power can be obtained by integrating in $\theta$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
P=\frac{\omega^{4}}{3 c^{3}}|\vec{p}|^{2} \tag{29.58}
\end{equation*}
$$

The computation of the emitted gravitational radiation is similar to electromagnetism but also more involved since the source terms are rank 2 tensors. We will proceed with the following steps:

1. Calculate the asymptotic fields emitted by a source $T_{\mu \nu}$.
2. Reduce the result to spatial components.
3. Apply the long wavelength approximation.

In contrast to the electromagnetic case there is no gravitational dipole radiation. The density is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho(\vec{r}, t)=\rho(\vec{r}) \exp (-i \omega t)+\text { c.c. } \quad \Rightarrow \quad \vec{p}=\int d^{3} r \vec{r} \rho(\vec{r})=M \vec{R}_{\mathrm{c} . \mathrm{m} .} \tag{29.59}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $M$ is the total mass and $\vec{R}_{\text {c.m. }}$. is the center of mass. If we choose the center of mass system as the inertial system then $\vec{p}=0$. Consequently $\vec{p}=0$ in all inertial systems. This is not possible in electromagnetism.

The following derivation of the quadrupole formula is skipped, it will be presented in full glory in the consecutive lecture. Instead we directly show the quadrupole formula:

We define the traceless quadrupole tensor of the mass distribution:

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q^{i j}(t)=\int d^{3} x\left(x^{i} x^{j}-\frac{1}{3} r^{2} \delta^{i j}\right) \rho(t, \vec{x}) \tag{29.60}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we find for the power emitted in gravitational waves

$$
\begin{equation*}
P=\frac{G}{5 c^{5}}\left\langle\dddot{Q}^{k l} \dddot{Q}_{k l}\right\rangle \tag{29.61}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\langle\cdot\rangle$ denotes a time average, for instance over one orbital period. The third time derivatives $\dddot{Q}_{i j}$ in the above equation can be easily evaluated for a plane wave $Q_{i j} \propto \exp [-i \omega t]$ and yield $\dddot{Q}_{i j} \propto \omega^{3}$ and thus $P \propto \omega^{6}$. Note again the difference to electromagnetic radiation, where we found $P \propto \omega^{4}$.


[^0]:    ${ }^{1} \Delta \frac{1}{\left|\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right|}=-4 \pi \delta^{(3)}\left(\vec{r}-\vec{r}^{\prime}\right)$

[^1]:    ${ }^{2}$ Notice the analogy with the axiom Gauss took as a basis of non-Euclidean geometry: he assumed that at any point on a curved surface we may erect a locally Cartesian coordinate system in which distances obey the law of Pythagoras.

[^2]:    ${ }^{3}$ Pound, R. V. and Snider, J. L., Effect of Gravity on Gamma Radiation, Physical Review, 140

[^3]:    ${ }^{4}$ Beside the curvature discussed here, there is also an exterior curvature. We only consider intrinsic curvatures here.

[^4]:    ${ }^{5} \eta$ is not unique since gauge transformations $\eta \mapsto \eta+\mathrm{d} \rho$, with $\rho$ any ( $p-1$ )-form, leave $\mathrm{d} \eta$ unchanged.
    ${ }^{6}$ This is a generalization of the results of three-dimensional vector analysis: $\operatorname{rot} \operatorname{grad} f=0$ and div rot $\vec{k}=0$.

[^5]:    ${ }^{7}$ Actually, it is often impossible to cover the whole manifold with a single set of coordinates. In the general case it is necessary to introduce different sets of coordinates in different overlapping patches of the manifold, with the constraint that in the overlap between the patch with coordinate $x^{i}$ and another patch with coordinate $\bar{x}^{i}$, the $x^{i}$ can be expressed in a smooth one-to-one way as functions of $\bar{x}^{i}$ and vice-versa (orientable manifold).
    ${ }^{8}$ The integral over a $p$-form over the overlap between two patches $\left(x^{i}\right.$ and $\left.\bar{x}^{i}\right)$ can be evaluated using either coordinate system, provided $\operatorname{det}\left(\frac{\partial x^{i}}{\partial \bar{x}^{j}}\right)>0$.

[^6]:    ${ }^{9} \mathrm{~d} \eta=0$, thus $L_{X}=i_{X} \circ \mathrm{~d}+\mathrm{d} \circ i_{X}$ applied on $\eta$ gives $L_{X} \eta=i_{X} \circ \mathrm{~d} \nmid \quad \mathrm{~d}\left(i_{X} \eta\right)$.

[^7]:    ${ }^{10}$ For a pseudo-Riemannian manifold, the corresponding connection coefficients are given by 9.6 or 9.11.
    ${ }^{11}$ semicolon shall denote the covariant derivative ("normal derivative" + additional terms, that vanish in (cartesian)
    Euclidean or Minkowski space)

[^8]:    ${ }^{12}$ Notice that $\underbrace{\nabla^{\left[\partial_{k}, \partial_{l}\right]}}_{=0} \partial_{j}=0$.

[^9]:    ${ }^{13}$ For a position independent metric (e.g. Cartesian coordinates) the Riemann tensor (and thus the scalar curvature) vanishes as the $\Gamma$ vanish.
    ${ }^{14}$ For a plane with polar coordinates we get a position dependent metric $\left(\begin{array}{cc}1 & 0 \\ 0 & r^{2}\end{array}\right): \mathrm{d} s^{2}=\mathrm{d} r^{2}+r^{2} \mathrm{~d} \theta^{2}$ and thus the $\Gamma$ do not vanish. However the curvature vanishes.
    ${ }^{15}$ The curvature does not depend on the choice of coordinates.

[^10]:    ${ }^{17}$ It can be shown that indeed the Ricci tensor is the only tensor made of the metric tensor and first and second deivatives of it, and which is linear in the second derivative.

[^11]:    ${ }^{18}$ Depending on the convention used for the Riemann tensor, one could also encounter a minus in front of the energymomentum tensor, as for example in Weinberg.

[^12]:    ${ }^{19}$ Note that $g_{\mu \nu ; \sigma}=0$.

[^13]:    ${ }^{20}$ variation (with respect to $g$ ) $\delta$ and normal derivative commute

[^14]:    ${ }^{21}$ Apparently it seems that the Schwarzschild metric is singular for $r=r_{s}$, but this is not the case. It is only an artefact of the coordinate choice. To be discussed later.

[^15]:    ${ }^{25}$ for $r \leq r_{S}$ the Schwarzschild solution is not applicable

[^16]:    26 "cheating" with Newton's theory gives half this result that is $0.84^{\prime \prime}$

[^17]:    $27 \frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}} \approx \frac{a}{r}$; terms $g_{00} u^{0} u^{0} \approx B c^{2}$ and $g_{11} u^{1} u^{1} \approx A v^{2} \approx A c^{2} \frac{a}{r}$ show up both and have thus to be expanded to the same order in $\frac{a}{r}$. Therefore $B$ has to be expanded one order in $\frac{a}{r}$ more than $A$.

[^18]:    ${ }^{28}$ B. Bertotti et al. Nature 425, 374 (2003)

[^19]:    ${ }^{29}$ Named after $19^{\text {th }}$ century mathematician Wilhelm Killing

[^20]:    ${ }^{30}$ Planck 2018 results. VI. Cosmological parameters, http://arxiv.org/abs/1807.06209
    ${ }^{31}$ LIGO Scientific and Virgo Collaborations (B.P. Abbott (Caltech) et al.), Observation of Gravitational Waves from a Binary Black Hole Merger, Phys.Rev.Lett. 116, (2016) 061102
    ${ }^{32}$ The Nobel Prize in Physics 2017, http://www.nobelprize.org/prizes/physics/2017
    ${ }^{33}$ LIGO Scientific and Virgo Collaborations (B. P. Abbot et al.), GWTC-1: A Gravitational-Wave Transient Catalog of Compact Binary Mergers Observed by LIGO and Virgo during the First and Second Observing Runs, Phys.Rev.X 9, (2019) 031040
    ${ }^{34}$ The LISA Pathfinder collaboration, M. Armano et al. Sub-Femto- g Free Fall for Space-Based Gravitational Wave Observatories: LISA Pathfinder Results, Phys.Rev.Lett. 116, (2016) 231101

[^21]:    ${ }^{35}$ Notice that we adopt here a different notation with respect to GR I: we adopt the "minus" convention of the EFE (i.e. $R_{\mu \nu}-\frac{R}{2} g_{\mu \nu}=-\frac{8 \pi G}{c^{4}} T_{\mu \nu}$ ), which simply follows from a change of sign of the Riemann tensor. The Riemann tensor from which 29.3 is derived differs thus from (GR I, 17.4) by a factor -1 .

